DENOMINATORS OF R-MATRICES, HIGHER DOREY'S RULES AND A GENERALIZATION OF T-SYSTEMS FOR QUANTUM AFFINE ALGEBRAS

SE-JIN OH AND TRAVIS SCRIMSHAW

Abstract. We construct a higher-level analogue of Dorey's rule, which describe certain surjective morphisms between Kirillov–Reshetikhin (KR) modules over quantum affine algebras. Building on this, we establish a generalized T-system of short exact sequences and prove the denominator formula between KR modules in all nonexceptional types, except with only mild ambiguities persisting in type $C_n^{(1)}$. As a consequence, we can completely classify when a tensor product of KR modules is simple. These results have further applications to Schur positivity statements, quiver Hecke algebras, and the recently introduced $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants in monoidal categories over quantum affine algebras and quiver Hecke algebras.

Contents

Date: October 14, 2025.
2010 *Mathematics Subject Classification.* 81R50, 17B37, 17B65, 16T25.
Key words and phrases. Quantum affine algebra, R-matrix, KR module, T-system, Dorey's rule.
The research of S.-j. Oh was supported by the National Research Foundation of Korea (NRF) Grant funded by the Korea government(MSIT) (NRF-2022R1A2C1004045).
T.S. was partially supported by Grant-in-Aid for JSPS Fellows 21F51028 and for Scientific Research for Early-Career Scientists 23K12983, as well as by the Australian Research Council DP170102648.

Introduction

One of the fundamental methods for studying (quantum) integrable systems is the use of the Yang–Baxter (or star-triangle) equation, which originally arose as a consistency condition in the construction of solutions to the Bethe ansatz [Bet31] (see also [Bax89]). In 1985, Drinfel'd and Jimbo independently introduced the notion of a quantum group $U_q(\mathfrak{g})$ associated with a Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ [Dri85, Jim85], motivated by aspects of the Yang–Baxter equation. These quantum groups can be viewed as q-deformations of the universal enveloping algebra $U(\mathfrak{g})$ of $\mathfrak{g}$ and have been extensively studied due to their connections with numerous areas of mathematics and physics, including statistical mechanics, algebraic geometry, dynamical systems, and number theory.

Here, we focus on the quantum affine algebras $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ (without derivation), which are associated with the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}' = [\mathfrak{g}, \mathfrak{g}]$, where $\mathfrak{g}$ is an affine (Kac–Moody) Lie algebra. The category $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ of finite dimensional $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules plays a central role in the study of quantum integrable systems such as the XXZ Heisenberg spin chain. The simple modules in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ have been completely parameterized by Chari and Pressley [CP91, CP95c], building on Drinfel'd's work [Dri87] on the corresponding Yangian (a degeneration of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$; see, e.g., [Fad95]). This parameterization uses a tuple of (monic) polynomials $(\mathcal{P}_i \mid i \in I_0)$, called Drinfel'd polynomials, where I_0 denotes the set of nodes of the Dynkin diagram of the associated finite dimensional Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}_0$. By factoring the Drinfel'd polynomials over $\mathbb{C}$, the classification of simple modules reduces to the roots a (counted with multiplicity) of $\mathcal{P}_i$, which are encoded as monomials in the variables $Y_{i,a}$. More precisely, Chari and Pressley showed that every simple module is a subquotient of a tensor product of fundamental modules $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i}\big)_a$ corresponding to each $Y_{i,a}$. There exist numerous explicit constructions of $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i}\big)_a$, such as via evaluation modules of the projection of a level-zero extremal weight module [Kas02], or as minimal affinizations of $V(\Lambda_i)$ [Cha95, CP95b, CP96a, Her07], the simple highest weight $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module with fundamental weight Λ_i. Consequently, understanding the finite dimensional simple modules reduces to understanding tensor products of fundamental modules.

Let us step back slightly and look at the category of finite dimensional $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules. This is a semisimple category, which affords us a simple and straightforward method to construct the (highest weight) simple modules. Consider $\lambda = \sum_{i \in I_0} m_i \Lambda_i$, and let

$$T_\lambda := \bigotimes_{i \in I_0} V(\Lambda_i)^{\otimes m_i}.$$

Being a semisimple category means we have

$$T_\lambda \simeq \bigoplus_{\mu \in P^+} V(\mu)^{\oplus n_\mu}$$

with P^+ denotes the set of dominant integral weights. An explicit construction of each $V(\Lambda_i)$ is known (see, e.g., [FH91]), which shows that its Λ_i-weight space is one dimensional. Consequently, the highest weight simple module $V(\lambda) \subseteq T_\lambda$ appears with multiplicity one (and its λ-weight space is one dimensional). Hence, we can realize $V(\lambda) = U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)v_\lambda$, where v_λ is any nonzero vector of weight λ. Moreover, for any modules M and N, there exists an isomorphism $M \otimes N \to N \otimes M$ called the R-matrix, although this map is usually not simply $m \otimes n \mapsto n \otimes m$ since $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$ is not a cocommutative Hopf algebra, that satisfies the Yang–Baxter equation. Therefore, the structure of these representations can be completely understood by examining their characters, and the character of a simple module $\chi(V(\lambda))$ can be computed using specific formulas such as the Weyl character formula (see, e.g., [CP95a, FH91, Hum08]). Taken together with Schur's lemma, this gives a complete understanding of the category of finite dimensional $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules.

Despite the parallel method of constructing simple modules, performing computations in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ is hard because it is not a semisimple category. In particular, there exist tensor products of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules that contain nontrivial submodules that do not decompose into a direct sum of simple submodules. Nevertheless, $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ has a rich structure as a rigid abelian monoidal category: the tensor functor is exact and every $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module has a left and right dual. The quantum affine algebra is also not a cocommutative Hopf algebra, and we do have examples where $M \otimes N \not\simeq N \otimes M$ (contrast this with $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules). There is still a homomorphism called the R-matrix

$$R\colon M_a \otimes N_b \to N_b \otimes M_a$$

that depends only on a single parameter $z = b/a$ and satisfies the (parameterized) Yang–Baxter equation. Unlike the R-matrix for $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules, the R-matrix for $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules is not always an isomorphism. However, if M and N are simple modules and one of them is real, the tensor product $M \otimes N$ is simple if and only if the R-matrix is an isomorphism [KKKO15a, KKKO18]. This extends to multiple tensor products for simple modules by examining each pair [Her10b]. Hence, understanding when the R-matrix is not an isomorphism is very significant in understanding the structure of $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$.

There is an analog of characters for $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules, known as q-characters, that was developed by Frenkel and Reshetikhin [FR99] (see also [FM01, Her10a, Kni95]). The q-characters are based on a generalization of the weight space decomposition and are expressed in terms of the variables $\{Y_{i,a} \mid i \in I_0, a \in \mathbb{C}\}$. The monomial that characterizes a simple module dominates all others and occurs with multiplicity one as with characters of $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules. While the q-character also cannot compute the submodule structure, it can compute which simple modules appear in the composition series of any representation in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$. However, there is no known method to compute, much less closed formula for, the q-character of a simple module in general as simple modules can have multiple dominant monomials (contrast this with $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-characters). Many cases can be handled using the Frenkel–Mukhin algorithm [FM01], which is recursive and known to work when the q-character has a unique dominant monomial, though there are examples where it fails [NN11] and a complete characterization of when the FM algorithm succeeds is not known. There is also a cluster algebra algorithm by Hernandez and Leclerc [HL16] and a recent algorithm of Kanakubo, Koshevoy, and Nakashima [KKN25] for computing q-characters of certain simple modules.

Additionally, unlike for $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules, the tensor product of simple $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules is generically simple as determining when the R-matrix is an isomorphism is governed by whether or not the parameter $z = b/a$ is a root of a *polynomial* called the denominator formula $d_{M,N}(z)$ [FM01]. Thus, roughly speaking, we can say the representation theory of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ is controlled by the denominator formula, even though the denominator formulas do not provide information about the image of the R-matrix in the tensor product nor the composition series when the R-matrix is not an isomorphism. The fact that the denominator formula depends only on the ratio of parameters implies we can reduce our study to a rigid monoidal subcategory $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0 \subseteq \mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ (see [HL10, Section 10] and [KKKO16, Section 3.1]) that contains all prime simple modules in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ up to parameter shifts whose Grothendieck ring $K(\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0)$ admits a Poincaré–Birkhoff–Witt-type (PBW-type) basis with monomials of the form $\bigotimes_{i,a} \mathtt{V}(\boxed{i})_a$ given in an order determined by the denominator formula [AK97, Cha02, Kas02, VV02]. So far, the denominator formula has been completely computed only when M and N are fundamental modules [Fuj22b, KKK15, KKKO16, KO18, OS19b, OS19a] (see also [KKM+92b, KKO19]). Hence, a major open problem is therefore to compute the denominator formula for all simple modules in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$.

One important property of this reducibility of tensor products is it allows surjections

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{i})_a \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{j})_b \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_c \tag{DR}$$

to exist. The epimorphisms (DR) are called Dorey's rules as they are the quantum group interpretation (due to Chari and Pressley [CP96b]) of the relations between three point couplings in the simple-laced affine Toda field theories and Lie theories as described by Dorey [Dor91, Dor93]. Indeed, Chari and Pressley's interpretation relies on the connection with (twisted) Coxeter elements for types $A_n^{(1)}$ and $D_n^{(1)}$ (and, respectively, $B_n^{(1)}$ and $C_n^{(1)}$) observed by Dorey, with analogous results for other types given in [FH15, KKKO16, Oh19, OS19b, OS19a, YZ11]. The first named author reinterpreted Dorey's rule and the PBW ordering in terms of properties of the Auslander–Reiten (AR) quiver constructed from a Dynkin quiver in simply-laced types [Oh17, Oh16]. Later, he and Suh introduced the notion of a folded AR quiver to extend these statements to non-simply-laced types by using the natural diagram foldings [OS19c, OS19d]. Dorey's rules also include antisymmetric fusion, which is the special case of $i = 1$ and $k = j + 1$, owes its name to the fact that $V(\Lambda_k) \simeq \bigwedge^k V(\Lambda_1)$, and has appeared previously in the (mathematical) physics literature (see, e.g., [BS06, Kun22]).

One other well-known homomorphism is generally known as the (symmetric) fusion rule:

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{i})_{q_i^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{i})_{q_i^{m-3}} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{i})_{q_i^{3-m}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{i})_{q_i^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{i^m}), \tag{FR}$$

where $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{i^m})$ is the simple module given by the head of the tensor product, which coincides with the image of the R-matrix that completely reverses the tensor product. The modules

$$\{\mathtt{V}(\boxed{i^m})_a \mid i \in I_0,\ m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0},\ a \in \mathbb{C}\}$$

are known as Kirillov–Reshetikhin (KR) modules and form an important and well-studied class of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules with many amazing (conjectural) properties. For example, KR modules are:

(A) prime modules in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ [CP95b, CP96a]; i.e., they are not isomorphic to a nontrivial tensor product of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules;
(B) real modules [HL16], which means that $M \otimes M$ is a simple $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module;
(C) conjectured to have crystal (psuedo)bases [HKO+02, HKO+99], which is known for all but a few nodes in exceptional types [BS20, KKM+92b, Nao18, NS21, OS08], that are simple (resp. (generally) perfect; see [KKM+92a]) crystals, which is known in nonexceptional types [Oka13] (resp. [KKM+92b, FOS10]).

KR modules appear in the study of integrable systems (see, e.g., [IKT12, KNS11] and references therein), such as being solutions to T-systems [Her06, Her10a, Nak04, Nak10], which is a short exact sequence that also implies particular homomorphisms. By the T-system relations, the q-characters of KR modules are computable by the Frenkel–Mukhin algorithm, by a sequence of mutations in a cluster algebra due to Hernandez and Leclerc [HL16], or by tableaux in certain cases [BR90, KOS95, NN06, NN07b, NN07a]. This also implies characters of their tensor products are given by fermionic formulas; see [HKO+02, Kir83, Kir84, KR87, OSS18] and references therein.

The main purpose of this paper is to compute the denominator formulas for all KR modules. We achieve this goal for all nonexceptional types, with the exception of $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^p})$ in type $C_n^{(1)}$ for odd integers m and p (Theorem 6.5, Theorem 6.7, Conjecture 6.6). We give conjectural formulas for types $E_{6,7,8}^{(1)}$ based on the results for types $A_n^{(1)}$ and $D_n^{(1)}$, which are also given by an appropriate shift of the denominator formulas between the corresponding fundamental modules (Conjecture 6.8). This extends to type $E_6^{(2)}$ since the twisted type is based off the corresponding untwisted type (*cf.* Theorem 6.7).

Let us now discuss our proof. We only need to focus on untwisted types because, as mentioned above, this allows us to easily compute the denominator formula for twisted types using generalized Schur–Weyl duality functors constructed in [KKKO15b], which preserve KR modules. Our primary method is to compute upper and lower bounds for the orders of zeros of the denominator formulas from known denominator formulas by using [AK97, Lemma C.15] (Proposition 3.4 in the text). This requires us determine the correct homomorphisms to apply this relation to, and this is the main technical difficulty of these proofs. In other words, our problem is reduced to identifying sufficient Dorey's rules to make the upper and lower bounds coincide, coupled with an induction argument. For $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p})$ when $|m - p|$ is "large," this can be achieved using the classical Dorey's rules, the fusion rule (FR) and duality. However, when $|m - p|$ is "small," we require additional generalized Dorey's rules to resolve these remaining ambiguities. Hence, we must not only produce new homomorphisms, but we must also ensure that they remove these ambiguities. Case in point, we are only able to prove the denominator formulas for $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^p})$ with $k > 1$ and m, p odd in type $C_n^{(1)}$ (Conjecture 6.6) when $|m - p|$ is "large" (Remark 6.10; Proposition 7.48) as we cannot resolve the remaining ambiguities.

Therefore we come to our first main result, a generalization of Dorey's rules involving tensor products of KR modules that we call higher Dorey's rule (Theorem 5.12, Theorem 8.2; see also Theorem 5.25 for twisted types). Here we emphasize that the $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants, which can be computed by the denominator formula of the R-matrix [KKOP20, Proposition 3.16] (Proposition 2.6 in the text) and yield Λ-invariants for pairs of simple modules [KKOP20, KKOP24c] (Proposition 2.11 in the text), play a crucial role in the monoidal categorification theory via quantum affine algebras and quiver Hecke algebras. For our proof of the higher Dorey's rule, we want to apply [KKOP20, Corollary 3.17] (Proposition 2.7 in the text) and [KO18, Lemma 7.3] (Proposition 2.8 in the text) to show such homomorphisms could exist as a composition of other homomorphisms. Since KR modules are real modules, we can use this theory. In particular, our proof that there could be such a surjection uses the fact that the composition lengths of the tensor products is at most 2, the normality of the sequence of modules, and a combination of induction arguments and showing certain morphisms are not injective or surjective. This imposes the restriction to $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})$ with either k or l equal to 1 in Theorem 5.12 as we need to utilize i-boxes and root modules to show the corresponding $\mathfrak{d}$-invariant is 1 to bound the composition length by 2. However, this is not sufficient to prove for Theorem 5.12 as we still need to verify the composition does not vanish.

In order to show the composition is nonzero, our strategy is to find a unique subspace in each module, which will yield the claim since we are composing injections and surjections. For most cases, we use the $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-decomposition of KR modules [Cha01, Her06, Her10a, KKM+92b, Nak03] (see also [HKO+02, HKO+99, Scr20]) and show a particular simple $V(\lambda)$ exists in all of them by utilizing the theory of Kashiwara crystals [Kas90, Kas91]. For this argument, only the $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-crystal structure is needed and not the $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-crystal structure [Shi02, OS08, FOS09]. However, for one computation in type $B_n^{(1)}$ (Proposition 5.2), we have multiplicities that force us to utilize the q-character combinatorics from [KOS95, NN06] to show there is a unique such dominant monomial to show the composition is nonzero.

With this we are able to finish our proof of the denominator formulas between any pair of KR modules. Indeed, using the higher Dorey's rule in Theorem 5.12, we then perform a series of tedious-but-straightforward computations to obtain tight bounds on all of the root multiplicities of the denominator formulas between KR modules (Section 7). As part of this computation, we also determine all of the universal coefficients of the R-matrices (Section 6.1). We also remark that in type $C_n^{(1)}$ our computations have completely determined the zeros of the denominator formula, just not their exact multiplicities. There exist auxiliary techniques that, in certain cases, can be used to resolve the ambiguities in multiplicities, although it is not clear whether they apply in full generality (see Appendix A). However, even with these ambiguities, we obtain the following as a consequence:

Corollary A. *There is a complete and precise characterization of which tensor products of KR modules are simple, which is determined by the roots of denominator formulas.*

One other immediate application of our denominator formulas is to complete the proof of the higher Dorey's rule (Theorem 8.2, Theorem 8.6) by computing additional $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants between KR modules. We note that almost all $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants appearing in Theorem 8.2 and Theorem 8.6 are larger than 1, which implies that the composition series of tensor products involved need not to be of length 2, but they still have KR modules as their simple heads. Moreover, we can compute Λ-invariants between KR modules in all cases except for the exceptional cases in type $C_n^{(1)}$ previously mentioned, which provides valuable information on R-matrices and, in turn, on the representation theory of quantum affine algebras.

Let us discuss some applications of the higher Dorey's rule. Using Theorem 5.12, we obtain the higher Dorey's rule of mesh type in Theorem 5.17 (also Corollary 5.21 and 5.22) and Theorem 8.6, which also yields the short exact sequences with two components are always tensor product of KR modules (Theorem 5.18). Since the usual T-system is a special family of the sequences in Theorem 5.18, Theorem 5.18 can be understood as a generalization of the T-system. This is different than the extended T-system of Mukhin and Young [MY12] (see also [Nao24]) since these extended T-systems

(1) arise from certain sequences of root modules $\{\mathtt{R}[k] \mid c \le k \le d\}$ and pairs of intervals $([a,b],[a+1,b+1])$ on the sequence and
(2) work only for affine types $A_n^{(1)}$ and $B_n^{(1)}$ due to the minuscule property (i.e., the nonzero monomials in the q-characters of all fundamentals have coefficient 1).

Later work by Li and Mukhin [LM13] (resp. Li [Li15]) constructed an extended T-system for type $G_2^{(1)}$ (resp. $C_3^{(1)}$). In contrast, our generalized T-system in Theorem 5.18 works for all types and, in general, cannot be described in either the form (1) nor in the typical form of T-system (see [KKOP24b]). In Appendix B, we give a different expression of the extended T-system in terms of the $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants utilizing the framework of Naoi [Nao24]. In there, the arguments and construction presented rely on a particular order of the sequence of fundamental modules (B.1) determined by the denominator formulas between fundamental modules (which was previously known). Therefore, we obtain the extended T-system satisfying the framework for all affine types (removing the necessity of the minuscule property).

Next, by applying our denominator formulas and higher Dorey's rules, we can deduce further interesting applications. We recover [FH14, Theorem 2.1] as a simple corollary (Theorem 8.11), as well as producing a generalization of this result (Theorem 8.14).

Another application concerns quiver Hecke algebras [KL09, Rou08]. Let $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}$ denote the quiver Hecke algebra of simply-laced $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}$. Since

(i) the heart subcategory $\mathscr{C}_Q$ of $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$ is equivalent to the category $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}$-gmod of finite dimensional graded R-modules via the generalized Schur–Weyl duality functor [KKK18, KKK15, KKKO16, KO18, OS19b] and
(ii) the categories $\mathscr{C}_Q$ and $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}$-gmod categorify the negative half $U_q^-(\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}})$ of the quantum group $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}})$ [KL09, Rou08],

we can interpret

(i′) the $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants from the denominator formulas in this paper as those for determinantial modules over $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}$ (Theorem 8.16) and
(ii′) the higher Dorey's rule and the generalized T-system in this paper as the multiplication behavior of dual canonical/upper global basis of $U_q^-(\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}})$ (see Remark 8.17).

As a final application, we consider the generalized Schur–Weyl duality functors in [KKO19] between the categories $\mathscr{C}^0_{A^{(1)}_{2n-1}}$ and $\mathscr{C}^0_{B^{(1)}_n}$, and the functors in [KKK15, KKKO16, KO18] among heart subcategories of $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$. Remarkably, these functors sends simple modules to simple modules bijectively, but they do *not* preserve the fundamental ones, much less KR modules; see [KKO19, Section 3] and [HO19, Section 12]. Consequently, by applying these functors to our higher Dorey's rule and generalized T-system, we obtain interesting relations among a certain family of modules (Corollary 8.18 and Corollary 8.19).

Let us remark on a number of distinctive features that we can see from our results. In our generalized T-system, the socle can sometimes be prime (Example 5.20), a phenomenon that does not occur in the usual T-systems except in the very restricted cases involving fundamental modules. From the denominator formulas, we observe that KR modules $M = \mathsf{V}(\boxed{1^m}), \mathsf{V}(\boxed{k})$ ($m \geq 1$, $k < n$) in types $A^{(1)}_{n-1}$ and $B^{(1)}_n$, typically described as one-row or one-column, possess the distinguished property that, for *any* KR module N, we have $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) \leq 1$. We call such modules M plain. Hence the tensor product $M \otimes N$ has composition length at most 2 (Corollary 7.10 and Corollary 7.19). This naturally leads to the question of whether $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) \leq 1$ holds when we instead allow N to range over all arbitrary prime real simple modules. It would also be interesting to classify which modules M in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ are plain.

On the other hand, we note that the existence of the (higher) Dorey's rules does not fundamentally rely on $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) \leq 1$ or the composition length at most 2. For example, in type $A^{(1)}_4$ with $M = \mathsf{V}(\boxed{2^3})_{(-q)^{-2}}$ and $N = \mathsf{V}(\boxed{2^3})_{(-q)^2}$, we can see $M \otimes N$ has a composition series of length 3 by using q-characters, and so $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) > 1$ (indeed, we can check $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) = 2$). However, this is the higher Dorey's rule (8.1a), which says the head of $M \otimes N$ is $\mathsf{V}(\boxed{4^3})$ (and also remains simple when restricted to $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module).

Furthermore, our results yield new and noteworthy observations concerning root modules. First, the denominator formulas provide the first explicit construction of root modules that are not KR modules (Remark 7.11). Second, the higher Dorey's rules give the first example of a root module appearing as the head of a tensor product of two non-root KR modules M and N with $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) > 1$ (Remark 8.3).

We end this introduction by placing our results in the broader context of monoidal categorification in the sense of [HL10]. In [HL16], Hernandez–Leclerc proved that the Grothendieck group $K(\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^-)$ of the half subcategory $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^-$ of $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$ is isomorphic to a cluster algebra and every KR module in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^-$ corresponds to a cluster variable in $K(\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^-)$. This result was later extended to the entire category $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$ in [KKOP22a, KKOP24b]. Subsequently, it was shown in [KKOP20, KKOP24b] that $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$ provides a monoidal categorification of the cluster algebra $K(\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0)$; that is, every cluster monomial corresponds to a real simple module in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$. In the proofs of [HL16, KKOP24b], the T-system plays the role of the exchange relation in cluster algebra theory. Hence, it is natural to ask whether the generalized T-system studied in this paper also corresponds to an exchange relation in $K(\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0)$.

Organization. This paper is organized as follows. In Section 1, we review the necessary background on quantum affine algebras and the relevant categories of finite dimensional representations. In Section 2, we recall R-matrices and root modules with their properties. In Section 3, we give the necessary background on KR modules, i-boxes, and Dorey's rule. In Section 4, we briefly review the Kashiwara crystals. In Section 5, we show the restricted version of the higher Dorey's rules. In Section 6, we state our main result, the denominator formulas in all nonexceptional affine types. In Section 7, we prove the denominator formulas, which is the technical core of the paper. In Section 8, we discuss several applications of our main results.

Conventions. Throughout this paper, we use the following conventions.

(1) For a statement $\mathtt{P}$, we set $\delta(\mathtt{P})$ to be 1 or 0 depending on whether $\mathtt{P}$ is true or not. In particular, we set $\delta_{i,j} = \delta(i = j)$.
(2) For $a \in \mathbb{Z} \cup \{-\infty\}$ and $b \in \mathbb{Z} \cup \{\infty\}$ with $a \le b$, we set
$$[a, b] = \{k \in \mathbb{Z} \mid a \le k \le b\}, \qquad [a, b) = \{k \in \mathbb{Z} \mid a \le k < b\},$$
$$(a, b] = \{k \in \mathbb{Z} \mid a < k \le b\}, \qquad (a, b) = \{k \in \mathbb{Z} \mid a < k < b\},$$
and call them *intervals*. When $a > b$, we understand them as empty sets. For simplicity, when $a = b$, we write $[a]$ for $[a, b]$.
(3) For a totally ordered set $J = \{\cdots > j_2 > j_1 > j_0 > j_{-1} > j_{-2} > \cdots\}$, write
$$\overset{\to}{\bigotimes_{j \in J}} A_j := \cdots A_{j_2} \otimes A_{j_1} \otimes A_{j_0} \otimes A_{j_{-1}} \otimes A_{j_{-2}} \cdots .$$
(4) For a field $\mathbf{k}$, $a \in \mathbf{k}$ and $f(z) \in \mathbf{k}(z)$, we denote by $\mathrm{zero}_{z=a} f(z)$ the order of zero of $f(z)$ at $z = a$.
(5) For a set A, we denote by $|A|$ the cardinality of A.
(6) For set A and B, a map $A \twoheadrightarrow B$ denotes a surjective map and a map $A \rightarrowtail B$ denotes an injective map.
(7) For integers $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$, we write $a \equiv_m b$ if $a - b$ is divisible by m, and $a \not\equiv_m b$ otherwise.

Acknowledgments. The authors thank Patrick Dorey, Ryo Fujita, David Hernandez, Masaki Kashiwara, Rinat Kedem, Myungho Kim, and Euiyong Park for useful discussions and comments. S-jO thanks Hokkaido University for its hospitality during his visit in January, 2025. TS thanks Sungkyunkwan University for its hospitality during his visit in March, 2025 and Ewha Womans University for its hospitality during his visit in March, 2019. The authors thank ICERM and the organizers of the semester program "Categorification and Computation in Algebraic Combinatorics" (Sept. 3–Dec. 5, 2025) for the excellent work environment. This work benefited from computations done using SageMath [Dev25].

1. Background

In this section, we briefly review the necessary background of this paper including quantum affine algebras $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$, finite dimensional modules over $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ and combinatorics related them.

1.1. **Quantum affine algebras.** Let q be an indeterminate. Let $(A, \widehat{P}, \Pi, \widehat{P}^\vee, \Pi^\vee)$ be an *affine Cartan datum* consisting of an *affine Cartan matrix* $A = (a_{i,j})_{i,j \in I}$ with an index set I, a *weight lattice* $\widehat{P}$, a set of *simple roots* $\Pi = \{\alpha_i\}_{i \in I} \subset \widehat{P}$, a *coweight lattice* $\widehat{P}^\vee := \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(\widehat{P}, \mathbb{Z})$ and a set of *simple coroots* $\{h_i\}_{i \in I} \subset \widehat{P}^\vee$. The datum satisfies $\langle h_i, \alpha_j \rangle = a_{i,j}$ for all $i, j \in I$, where $\langle\ ,\ \rangle \colon \widehat{P}^\vee \times \widehat{P} \to \mathbb{Z}$ is the canonical pairing. We *choose* $\{\Lambda_i\}_{i \in I}$ such that $\langle h_j, \Lambda_i \rangle = \delta_{i,j}$ for $i, j \in I$ and call them the *fundamental weights*. Note that there exist a diagonal matrix

$$D = \mathrm{diag}(d_i \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1} \mid i \in I) \text{ such that } DA \text{ is symmetric.} \tag{1.1}$$

We take the diagonal matrix D such that $\min(d_i)_{i \in I} = 1$.

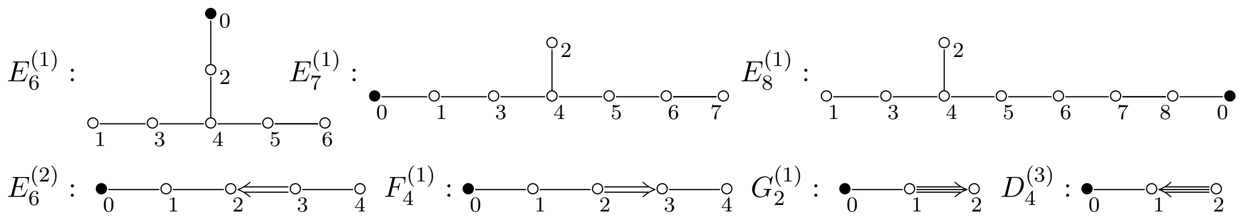


FIGURE 1. Dynkin diagrams $\triangle$ for the exceptional affine types. The affine node is marked black.

We take the primitive *imaginary root* (also known as the *null root*) $\delta = \sum_{i\in I} u_i\alpha_i$ and the *canonical central element* $c = \sum_{i\in I} c_i h_i$ such that $\{\mu \in \bigoplus_{i\in I}\mathbb{Z}\alpha_i \mid \langle h_i, \mu\rangle = 0 \text{ for every } i \in I\} = \mathbb{Z}\delta$ and $\{h \in \bigoplus_{i\in I}\mathbb{Z}h_i \mid \langle h, \alpha_i\rangle = 0 \text{ for every } i \in I\} = \mathbb{Z}c$. We choose $\rho \in \widehat{P}$ (resp. $\rho^\vee \in \widehat{P}^\vee$) such that $\langle h_i, \rho\rangle = 1$ (resp. $\langle \rho^\vee, \alpha_i\rangle = 1$) for all $i \in I$.

Set $\mathfrak{h} := \mathbb{Q}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \widehat{P}^\vee$. Then there exists the symmetric bilinear form $(\ ,\ )$ on $\mathfrak{h}^*$ satisfying

$$\langle h_i, \mu\rangle = \frac{2(\alpha_i, \mu)}{(\alpha_i, \alpha_i)} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \langle c, \mu\rangle = (\delta, \mu) \quad \text{for any } i \in I \text{ and } \mu \in \mathfrak{h}^*.$$

Let γ be the smallest positive integer such that $\gamma(\alpha_i, \alpha_i)/2 \in \mathbb{Z}$ for every $i \in I$. Note that (α_i, α_i) may not be integer, $(\alpha_i, \alpha_i)/2$ takes the values $1, 2, 3, 1/2, 1/3$.

Let q be an indeterminate. For $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$ and $i \in I$, we define

$$[n]_i = \frac{q_i^n - q_i^{-n}}{q_i - q_i^{-1}}, \qquad [n]_i! = \prod_{k=1}^{n}[k]_i, \qquad \begin{bmatrix} m \\ n \end{bmatrix}_i = \frac{[m]_i!}{[m-n]_i![n]_i!}, \qquad (z;q_i)_\infty := \prod_{s=0}^{\infty}(1-q_i^s z)$$

and set $q_i := q^{(\alpha_i,\alpha_i)/2}$ in $\{q^{1/m}, q^n \mid m, n \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}\}$.

We denote by $U_q(\mathfrak{g})$ the *quantum affine algebra* (with derivation) over $\mathbb{Q}(q^{1/\gamma})$ and $\mathfrak{g}$ the *affine Kac-Moody algebra* associated with $(A, \widehat{P}, \Pi, \widehat{P}^\vee, \Pi^\vee)$, respectively. We also denote by $\triangle = (\triangle_0, \triangle_1)$ the Dynkin diagram of $\mathfrak{g}$ consisting of (i) the set of vertices $\triangle_0$ and (ii) the set of edges $\triangle_1$, respectively. We will use the standard convention in [Kac90] for labeling of affine Dynkin diagrams $\triangle$ for non-exceptional affine types except type $A_{2n}^{(2)}$, in which case we take the longest simple root as α_0. For the exceptional types, we use the labeling given in Figure 1 mostly following [Bou02]. We denote by $d_\triangle(i,j)$ the number of edge between vertices i and j in $\triangle$.

Let $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g}) := U_q([\mathfrak{g}, \mathfrak{g}])$ be the affine quantum group without derivation. Let $P := \widehat{P}/\mathbb{Z}\delta$ denote its corresponding weight lattice, and let $\mathrm{cl}\colon \widehat{P} \to P$ denote the canonical projection. When there is no danger of confusion, we will use the same notation for the fundamental weights, simple (co)roots, etc. as for $U_q(\mathfrak{g})$.

We define $\mathfrak{g}_0$ to be the subalgebra of $\mathfrak{g}$ generated by the Chevalley generators e_i, f_i and h_i for $i \in I_0 := I \setminus \{0\}$ and $W_0 = \langle s_i \mid i \in I_0\rangle$ to be the Weyl group of $\mathfrak{g}_0$ generated by the simple reflections $\{s_i\}_{i\in I_0}$. Let $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$ denote the corresponding quantum group. Note that $\mathfrak{g}_0$ is a finite dimensional simple Lie algebra and W_0 is a finite group that contains a unique longest element w_0. Let $P_0 \subseteq P$ and $Q_0 \subseteq Q$ denote the corresponding weight and root lattices, respectively, with $P_0^+ := \bigoplus_{i\in I_0}\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}\Lambda_i$ and $Q_0^+ := \bigoplus_{i\in I_0}\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}\alpha_i$ being the set of *dominant weights* and *positive root cone*, respectively.

1.2. **Finite dimensional integrable modules.** When considering $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules, we take the algebraic closure of $\mathbb{C}(q)$ in $\bigcup_{m>0}\mathbb{C}(\!(q^{1/m})\!)$ as our base field $\mathbf{k}$. For a $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module M, let $\mathrm{soc}(M)$ (resp. $\mathrm{hd}(M)$) denote the *socle* (resp. *head*) of M, the largest semisimple submodule (resp. quotient) of M.

We say that a $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module M is *integrable* if (i) M decomposes into P-weight spaces; that is, $M = \bigoplus_{\mu\in P} M_\mu$, where $M_\mu := \{v \in M \mid K_i v = q^{\langle h_i,\mu\rangle} v\}$, and (ii) e_i and f_i ($i \in I$) act on M nilpotently. Here $K_i := q_i^{h_i}$.

We denote by $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ the category of finite dimensional integrable $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules. Note that $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ is a tensor category from the coproduct Δ of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$:

$$\Delta(q^h) = q^h \otimes q^h, \qquad \Delta(e_i) = e_i \otimes 1 + K_i^{-1} \otimes e_i, \qquad \Delta(f_i) = f_i \otimes K_i + 1 \otimes f_i.$$

A simple module M in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ contains a non-zero vector $\boldsymbol{u}$ of weight $\lambda \in P$ such that (i) $\langle h_i, \lambda\rangle \geq 0$ for all $i \in I_0$, (ii) all the weight of M are contained in $\lambda - \sum_{i\in I_0} \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}\mathrm{cl}(\alpha_i)$. Such a λ is unique and $\boldsymbol{u}$ is unique up to a constant multiple. We call λ the *dominant extremal weight* of M and $\boldsymbol{u}$ the *dominant extremal weight vector* of M.

We note that (ii) implies that if we restrict M to a $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module, then there exists a unique weight $\lambda \in P_0$ such that every nontrivial weight space has weight in $\lambda - Q_0^+$. We say the weights $\mu \in \lambda - Q_0^+$ are *dominated* by λ; that is, $\mu - \lambda \in Q_0^+$. This is a well-known fact (see, e.g., [Hum08, Ch. 1.6]) that finite dimensional simple $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules are parameterized by $\lambda \in P_0^+$, which we denote by $V(\lambda)$. Hence $M \simeq \bigoplus_\mu V(\mu)^{\oplus m_\mu}$, for some multiplicities m_μ, where μ is dominated by λ.

For an integrable $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module M, the *affinization* $M_z := \mathbf{k}[z, z^{-1}] \otimes M$ of M is considered as a vector space over $\mathbf{k}$ and is equipped with a $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module structure

$$e_i(u_z) = z^{\delta_{i,0}}(e_i u)_z, \qquad f_i(u_z) = z^{-\delta_{i,0}}(f_i u)_z, \qquad K_i(u_z) = (K_i u)_z,$$

for all $i \in I$. Here u_z denotes $\mathbf{1} \otimes u \in M_z$ for $u \in M$. We sometimes write z_M as the action of z on M_z to emphasize the module M. For $\zeta \in \mathbf{k}^\times$, we define

$$M_\zeta := M_z/(z_M - \zeta)M_z.$$

We call ζ the *spectral parameter*. Note that, for a module $M \in \mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ and $\zeta \in \mathbf{k}^\times$, we have $M_\zeta \in \mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$.

For each $i \in I_0$, we define the *fundamental level zero weight* as

$$\varpi_i := \gcd(\mathsf{c}_0, \mathsf{c}_i)^{-1}\,\mathrm{cl}(\mathsf{c}_0\Lambda_i - \mathsf{c}_i\Lambda_0) \in P_{\mathrm{cl}}.$$

Then there exists a unique simple module $V(\varpi_i)$ in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$, called the *fundamental module of (level 0) weight ϖ_i*, satisfying the certain conditions (see, e.g., [Kas02, §5.2]). We call $V(\varpi_i)_x$ ($x \in \mathbf{k}^\times$) also a fundamental module.

Remark 1.1. Let m_i be a positive integer such that

$$W(\Lambda_i - d_i\Lambda_0) = (\Lambda_i - d_i\Lambda_0) + \mathbb{Z}m_i\delta.$$

We have $m_i = (\alpha_i, \alpha_i)/2$ in the case $\mathfrak{g}$ is the dual of an untwisted affine algebra, and $m_i = 1$ otherwise. Then, for $x, y \in \mathbf{k}^\times$, we have [AK97, §1.3]

$$V(\varpi_i)_x \simeq V(\varpi_i)_y \quad \text{if and only if} \quad x^{m_i} = y^{m_i}.$$

Thus, for twisted types, we will simply write M_z instead of $M_{z^{m_i}}$.

For a module M in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$, let us denote the right and the left dual of M by $\mathscr{D}M$ and $\mathscr{D}^{-1}M$, respectively. That is, we have isomorphisms

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})}(M\otimes X, Y) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})}(X, \mathscr{D}M\otimes Y), \qquad \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})}(X\otimes \mathscr{D}M, Y) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})}(X, Y\otimes M),$$
$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}M\otimes X, Y) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})}(X, M\otimes Y), \quad \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})}(X\otimes M, Y) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})}(X, Y\otimes \mathscr{D}^{-1}M),$$

which are functorial in $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules X and Y. In particular, $V(\varpi_i)_x$ ($x \in \mathbf{k}^\times$) has the left dual and right dual as follows:

$$\mathscr{D}^{-1}\big(V(\varpi_i)_x\big) \simeq V(\varpi_{i^*})_{x(p^*)^{-1}}, \qquad \mathscr{D}\big(V(\varpi_i)_x\big) \simeq V(\varpi_{i^*})_{xp^*}$$

where $p^* := (-1)^{\langle \rho^\vee, \delta \rangle} q^{(\rho,\delta)}$ and i^* is the image of i under the involution of I_0 determined by the action of w_0 (see [AK97, Appedix A]); i.e., $w_0(\alpha_i) = -\alpha_{i^*}$.

(1.2) $p^* =$

$A^{(1)}_{n-1}$	$B^{(1)}_n$	$C^{(1)}_n$	$D^{(1)}_n$	$G^{(1)}_2$	$A^{(2)}_n$	$D^{(2)}_{n+1}$	$D^{(3)}_4$	$E^{(1)}_6$	$E^{(1)}_7$	$E^{(1)}_8$	$F^{(1)}_4$	$E^{(2)}_6$
$(-q)^n$	q^{2n-1}	q^{n+1}	q^{2n-2}	q^4	$-q^{n+1}$	$-(-q^2)^n$	q^6	q^{12}	q^{18}	q^{30}	q^9	$-q^{12}$

We say that a $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module M is *good* if it has a *bar involution*, a *crystal basis* with *simple crystal graph*, and a *global basis* (see [Kas02] for the precise definition). We say that a $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ module M is *quasi-good* if $M \simeq V_c$ for some good module V and $c \in \mathbf{k}^\times$. It is known that the fundamental modules are (quasi-)good modules.

For simple modules M and N in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$, we say that M and N *strongly commute* (or M *strongly commutes with* N) if $M \otimes N$ is simple. We say that a simple module L in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ is *real* if L strongly commutes with itself, i.e., if $L \otimes L$ is simple. We say that a simple module L in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ is *prime* if there exist no non-trivial modules M_1 and M_2 such that $L \simeq M_1 \otimes M_2$.

A monoidal subcategory $\mathcal{C}$ of $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ is called a *skeleton subcategory* if every prime simple module in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ is a parameter shifts of some prime simple module in $\mathcal{C}$.

1.3. **Convex orders.** Next, we will briefly review convex orders on the set of positive roots of finite Lie algebra g. We denote by Φ^+_g the set of positive roots, $\Pi_\mathsf{g} = \{\alpha_i \mid i \in I_0\}$ the set of simple roots, and $\{\Lambda_i \mid i \in I_0\}$ the set of fundamental weights for g, respectively. Throughout this manuscript, we sometimes omit the subscript g in our notation for simplicity when there is no danger of confusion.

It is well-known that for any reduced expression $\widetilde{w}_0 = s_{i_1} s_{i_2} \cdots s_{i_\ell}$ of w_0, we have

$$\Phi^+_\mathsf{g} = \{\beta^{\widetilde{w}_0}_k = s_{i_1} s_{i_2} \cdots s_{i_{k-1}}(\alpha_{i_k}) \mid 1 \le k \le \ell\} \quad \text{and} \quad \left|\Phi^+_\mathsf{g}\right| = \ell. \tag{1.3}$$

Thus, we can define a total order $<_{\widetilde{w}_0}$ on Φ^+_g as $\beta^{\widetilde{w}_0}_k \le_{\widetilde{w}_0} \beta^{\widetilde{w}_0}_l$ if $k \le l$.

We say that two reduced expression $\widetilde{w}_0$ and $\widetilde{w}'_0$ of the longest element $w_0 \in W_\mathsf{g}$ are *commutation equivalent* if one can obtain $\widetilde{w}'_0$ from $\widetilde{w}_0$ by applying the commutation relations $s_i s_j = s_j s_i$ ($d_{\triangle \mathsf{g}}(i,j) > 1$). We denote by $[\widetilde{w}_0]$ the commutation class of $\widetilde{w}_0$ under this equivalence.

We say that a partial order $\prec$ on Φ^+ is *convex* if $\alpha, \beta, \alpha+\beta \in \Phi^+$, we have either $\alpha \prec \alpha+\beta \prec \beta$ or $\beta \prec \alpha+\beta \prec \alpha$. In [Pap94, Zhe87], the following order $\prec_{[\widetilde{w}_0]}$ is shown to be convex for any $[\widetilde{w}_0]$:

$$\alpha \prec_{[\widetilde{w}_0]} \beta \ \text{ if and only if } \ \alpha <_{\widetilde{w}'_0} \beta \text{ for all } \widetilde{w}'_0 \in [\widetilde{w}_0].$$

An element $\underline{m} = \{\underline{m}_\beta\}_{\beta \in \Phi^+} \in \mathbb{Z}^{\Phi^+}_{\ge 0}$ is called an *exponent*, parameterized by Φ^+. For an exponent $\underline{m}$, we set $\mathrm{wt}(\underline{m}) := \sum_{\beta \in \Phi^+} \underline{m}_\beta \beta \in Q^+_0$ of g.

Definition 1.2 ([McN15, Oh19])**.** We define the partial orders $<^{\mathsf{b}}_{\widetilde{w}_0}$ and $\prec^{\mathsf{b}}_{[\widetilde{w}_0]}$ on $\mathbb{Z}^{\Phi^+}_{\ge 0}$ as follows:

(i) $<^{\mathsf{b}}_{\widetilde{w}_0}$ is the bi-lexicographical partial order induced by $<_{\widetilde{w}_0}$. Namely, $\underline{m} <^{\mathsf{b}}_{\widetilde{w}_0} \underline{m}'$ if there exist j and k ($1 \le j \le k \le \ell$) such that
   (a) $\mathrm{wt}(\underline{m}) = \mathrm{wt}(\underline{m}')$,
   (b) there exists $\alpha \in \Phi^+$ such that $\underline{m}_\alpha < \underline{m}'_\alpha$ and $\underline{m}_\beta = \underline{m}'_\beta$ for any β such that $\beta <_{\widetilde{w}_0} \alpha$,
   (c) there exists $\eta \in \Phi^+$ such that $\underline{m}_\eta < \underline{m}'_\eta$ and $\underline{m}_\zeta = \underline{m}'_\zeta$ for any β such that $\eta <_{\widetilde{w}_0} \zeta$.

(ii) For exponents $\underline{m}$ and $\underline{m}'$, we have $\underline{m} \prec^{\mathsf{b}}_{[\widetilde{w}_0]} \underline{m}'$ if the following conditions are satisfied:
$$\underline{m} <^{\mathsf{b}}_{\widetilde{w}'_0} \underline{m}' \quad \text{for all } \widetilde{w}'_0 \in [\widetilde{w}_0].$$

We say an exponent $\underline{m} = \{\underline{m}_\beta\}_{\beta \in \Phi^+}$ is *$[\widetilde{w}_0]$-simple* if it is minimal with respect to the partial order $\prec^{\mathsf{b}}_{[\widetilde{w}_0]}$. For a given $[\widetilde{w}_0]$-simple exponent $\underline{s} = \{\underline{s}_\beta\}_{\beta \in \Phi^+}$, we call a *cover* of $\underline{s}$ under $\prec^{\mathsf{b}}_{[\widetilde{w}_0]}$ a *$[\widetilde{w}_0]$-minimal exponent of $\underline{s}$*. The *$[\widetilde{w}_0]$-distance* of an exponent $\underline{m}$ is the largest integer $k \ge 0$ such that

$$\underline{m}^{(0)} \prec^{\mathsf{b}}_{[\widetilde{w}_0]} \cdots \prec^{\mathsf{b}}_{[\widetilde{w}_0]} \underline{m}^{(k)} = \underline{m}$$

and $\underline{m}^{(0)}$ is $[\widetilde{w}_0]$-simple. We denote by the number k as $\mathrm{dist}_{[\widetilde{w}_0]}(\underline{m})$.

We sometimes identify $\gamma \in \Phi^+$ with the exponent $\underline{m}$ such that $\underline{m}_\beta = \delta(\beta = \gamma)$. We call an exponent $\underline{m}$ a *pair* if $|\underline{m}| := \sum_{\beta\in\Phi^+} m_\beta = 2$ and $m_\beta \le 1$ for $\beta \in \Phi^+$. We mainly use the notation $\underline{p}$ for a pair and identify $\underline{p}$ with $\{\alpha,\beta\} \in \Phi^+$ with $\underline{p}_\alpha = \underline{p}_\beta = 1$. Consider a pair $\underline{p}$ such that there exists a unique $[\widetilde{w}_0]$-simple exponent $\underline{s}$ satisfying $\underline{s} \preceq^{\mathtt{b}}_{[\widetilde{w}_0]} \underline{p}$, we call $\underline{s}$ the *$[\widetilde{w}_0]$-socle* of $\underline{p}$ and denoted it by $\mathrm{soc}_{[\widetilde{w}_0]}(\underline{p})$.

We use the notation $\{a_1\beta_1, \dots, a_r\beta_r\}_{\beta\in\Phi^+}$ to represent the exponent $\underline{m}$ such that $\underline{m}_{\beta_k} = a_k$ for $1 \le k \le r$, and $\underline{m}_\alpha = 0$ for $\alpha \ne \beta_k$.

1.4. **Q-datum and quivers.** In this subsection, we briefly review the Q-data and their related quivers by following [FO21] mainly. We first consider the quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ of *untwisted* type. For each *untwisted* quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$, we fix a function $\epsilon\colon I_0 \to \{0,1\}$ such that

$$\epsilon_i \equiv \epsilon_j + \min(d_i, d_j) \pmod 2 \quad \text{whenever } a_{i,j} < 0 \text{ for } i,j \in I_0, \tag{1.4}$$

where $A = (a_{i,j})_{i\in I}$ denotes the affine Cartan matrix of $\mathfrak{g}$. We call ϵ a *parity function*. Set

$$\widehat{I}_0 := \{(i,p) \in I_0 \times \mathbb{Z} \mid p \equiv \epsilon_i \pmod 2\}.$$

For each *untwisted* quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$, we assign the finite simple Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}$ of symmetric type as follows:

(1.5)

$\mathfrak{g}$	$A_n^{(1)}$ $(n \ge 1)$	$B_n^{(1)}$ $(n \ge 2)$	$C_n^{(1)}$ $(n \ge 3)$	$D_n^{(1)}$ $(n \ge 4)$	$E_{6,7,8}^{(1)}$	$F_4^{(1)}$	$G_2^{(1)}$
$\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}$	A_n	A_{2n-1}	D_{n+1}	D_n	$E_{6,7,8}$	E_6	D_4

The finite dimensional simple Lie algbera $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}$ corresponding to the untwisted affine Kac-Moody algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ can be understood as an *unfolding* of $\mathfrak{g}_0$ since there exists a Dynkin diagram automorphism $\sigma = \mathrm{id}, \vee, \widetilde{\vee}$ on $\triangle^{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}} = (\triangle_0^{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}, \triangle_1^{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}})$ whose orbits yield a Dynkin diagram $\triangle^{\mathfrak{g}_0} = (\triangle_0^{\mathfrak{g}_0}, \triangle_1^{\mathfrak{g}_0})$ of $\mathfrak{g}_0$.

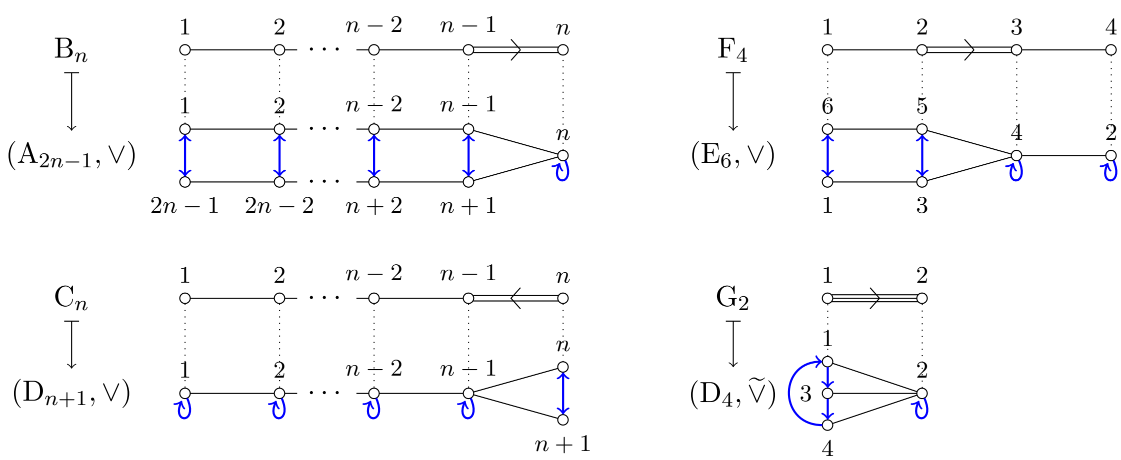


FIGURE 2. The Dynkin diagram and automorphism $(\blacktriangle, \sigma)$ for non-simply-laced $\mathfrak{g}_0$.

For the notational simplicity, we set $\blacktriangle := \triangle^{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}$ for untwisted affine Kac-Moody algebra $\mathfrak{g}$. Thus (i) $\blacktriangle = \triangle^{\mathfrak{g}_0}$ and $\sigma = \mathrm{id}$ if $\mathfrak{g}$ is symmetric, and (ii) $\blacktriangle \ne \triangle^{\mathfrak{g}_0}$ and $\sigma \ne \mathrm{id}$ otherwise. Hence (a) we can associate the pair $(\blacktriangle, \sigma)$ for each untwisted affine Kac-Moody algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, and (b) the index set I_0 of $\mathfrak{g}_0$ can be considered as an orbits $I_0 = \{i, j, \dots\}$ of $\blacktriangle_0 = \{\imath, \jmath, \dots\}$ under the action σ. Hence we understand $I_0 \ni i = \bar{\imath}$ the orbit of $\imath \in \blacktriangle_0$.

Definition 1.3. A *height function* on $(\blacktriangle, \sigma)$ of $\mathfrak{g}$ is a function $\xi : \blacktriangle_0 \to \mathbb{Z}$ satisfying the following conditions (here we write $\xi_\imath := \xi(\imath)$):

(i) Let $\imath, \jmath \in \blacktriangle_0$ with $d_{\blacktriangle}(\imath,\jmath) = 1$ and $d_{\bar{\imath}} = d_{\bar{\jmath}}$. Then we have $|\xi_\imath - \xi_\jmath| = d_{\bar{\imath}} = d_{\bar{\jmath}}$.
(ii) Let $i, j \in I_0$ with $d_{\triangle}(i,j) = 1$ and $d_i = 1 < d_j = r$. Then there exists a unique $\jmath \in j$ such that $|\xi_\imath - \xi_\jmath|$ and $\xi_{\sigma^k(\jmath)} = \xi_\jmath + 2k$ for any $1 \le k < r$, where $i = \{\imath\}$.

Such triple $\mathcal{Q} = (\blacktriangle, \sigma, \xi)$ is called a *Q-datum* for $\mathfrak{g}$.

For $\imath, \jmath \in \blacktriangle_0$, we define

$$\widetilde{d}_{\blacktriangle,\sigma}(\imath,\jmath) := \sum_{k=1}^{s} \min(d_{\overline{\imath_k}}, d_{\overline{\imath_{k+1}}})$$

where $(\imath = \imath_1, \imath_2, \ldots, \imath_{s+1} = \jmath)$ is a path from $\imath$ to $\jmath$ in $\blacktriangle$ with $s = d_{\blacktriangle}(\imath,\jmath)$. Note that it is well-defined since there exists only one such path in $\blacktriangle$. Note that $\widetilde{d}_{\blacktriangle,\sigma}(\imath,\jmath) \neq d_{\blacktriangle}(\imath,\jmath)$ only if $\mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}, F_4^{(1)}$. For instance $\mathfrak{g} = B_3^{(1)}$ and $(\imath,\jmath) = (1,5)$, we have $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}} = A_5$ and $\widetilde{d}_{\blacktriangle,\sigma}(\imath,\jmath) = 6$.

Let $\mathcal{Q} = (\blacktriangle, \sigma, \xi)$ be a Q-datum for $\mathfrak{g}$. A vertex $\imath \in \triangle_0$ is called a *sink* of $\mathcal{Q}$ if we have $\xi_\imath < \xi_\jmath$ for any $\jmath \in \blacktriangle_0$ with $d_{\blacktriangle}(\imath,\jmath) = 1$. When $\imath$ is a sink of $\mathcal{Q}$, we define a new Q-datum $\mathsf{s}_\imath\mathcal{Q} = (\blacktriangle, \sigma, \mathsf{s}_\imath\xi)$ of $\mathfrak{g}$ with

$$(\mathsf{s}_\imath\xi)_\jmath := \xi_\jmath + 2d_{\bar{\imath}}\delta_{\imath,\jmath} \quad \text{for any } \jmath \in \blacktriangle_0.$$

For a sequence $\underline{\imath} = (\imath_1, \imath_2, \ldots, \imath_r)$ in $\blacktriangle_0$, $\underline{\imath}$ is said to be *reduced* if $w^{\underline{\imath}} := s_{\imath_1} \cdots s_{\imath_r}$ be a reduced expression of an element $w \in W_{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}$. For a Q-datum $\mathcal{Q}$ of $\mathfrak{g}$, $\underline{\imath}$ is said to be *$\mathcal{Q}$-adapted* or *adapted to $\mathcal{Q}$* if $\imath_k$ is a sink of the $\mathcal{Q}$-datum $\mathsf{s}_{\imath_{k-1}} \cdots \mathsf{s}_{\imath_2}\mathsf{s}_{\imath_1}\mathcal{Q}$ for all $1 \le k \le r$.

Then the following are known (see [FO21] for more details):

(a) For each Q-datum $\mathcal{Q} = (\blacktriangle, \sigma, \xi)$, there exist reduced expressions $\underline{w_0}$ of w_0 adapted to $\mathcal{Q}$. Also all reduced expressions adapted to $\mathcal{Q}$ form a commutation class, denoted by $[\mathcal{Q}]$.
(b) For each Q-datum $\mathcal{Q} = (\blacktriangle, \sigma, \xi)$, there exists a unique element $\tau_{\mathcal{Q}} \in W_{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}} \rtimes \langle\sigma\rangle$ satisfying certain properties, which we call the *$\mathcal{Q}$-Coxeter element*.

Note that for each $\mathcal{Q}$-Coxeter element τ_Q, there exists a unique height function ξ up to $\mathbb{Z}$.

Let ξ be a height function on $(\blacktriangle, \sigma)$. We define a quiver $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma = (\widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma_0, \widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma_1)$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma_0 &= \{(\imath,p) \in \blacktriangle_0 \times \mathbb{Z} \mid p - \xi_\imath \in 2d_{\bar{\imath}}\mathbb{Z}\}, \\ \widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma_1 &= \{(\imath,p) \to (\jmath,s) \mid (\imath,p),(\jmath,s) \in \widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma_0,\ d(\imath,\jmath) = 1,\ s - p = \min(d_{\bar{\imath}}, d_{\bar{\jmath}})\}. \end{aligned}$$

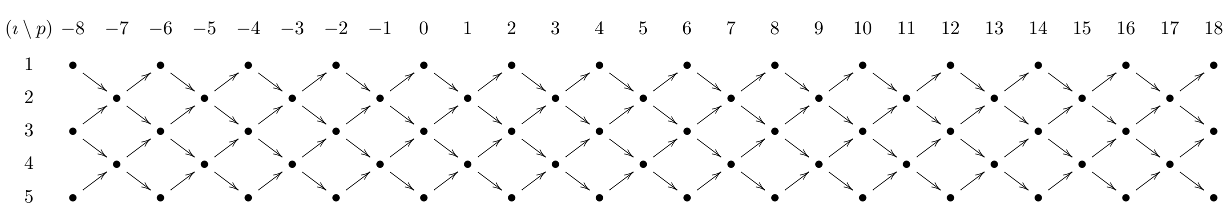
We call $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma$ the *repetition quiver* of $\mathfrak{g}$.

Recall we have fixed a parity function $\epsilon : I_0 \to \{0,1\}$ for $\mathfrak{g}_0$ and defined the set $\widehat{I}_0$. Hereafter, we always assume that a height function ξ on $(\blacktriangle, \sigma)$ always satisfies the condition

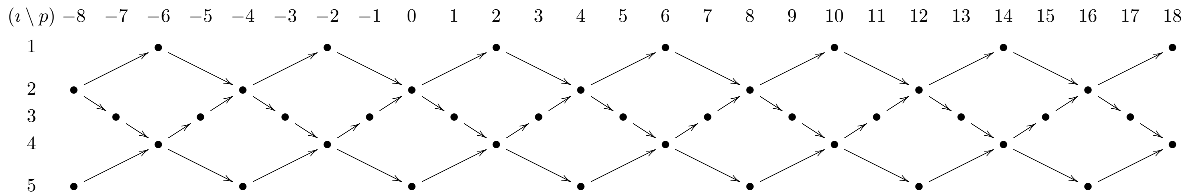
$$\xi_\imath \equiv \epsilon_{\bar{\imath}} \pmod 2 \qquad \text{for any } \imath \in \blacktriangle_0.$$

Example 1.4. Here are some examples of the repetition quiver $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma$.

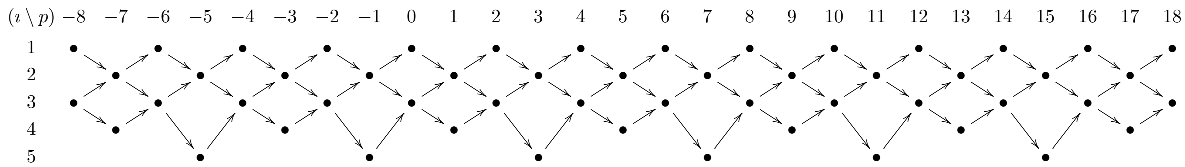
(i) For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $A_5^{(1)}$, we have $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}} = A_5$, $\sigma = \mathrm{id}$ and the repetition quiver $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\mathrm{id}}$ is depicted as:



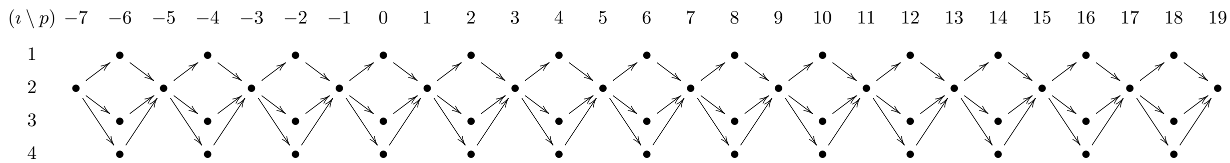
(ii) For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $B_3^{(1)}$, we have $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}} = A_5$, $\sigma = \vee$ and the repetition quiver $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\vee}$ is depicted as:



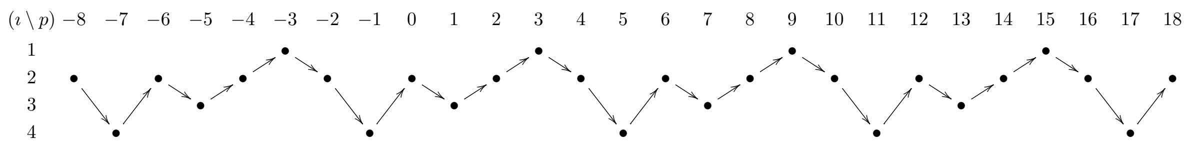
(iii) For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $C_4^{(1)}$, we have $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}} = D_5$, $\sigma = \vee$ and the repetition quiver $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\vee}$ is depicted as:



(iv) For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $D_4^{(1)}$, we have $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}} = D_4$, $\sigma = \mathrm{id}$ and the repetition quiver $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ is depicted as:



(v) For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $G_2^{(1)}$, we have $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}} = D_4$, $\sigma = \widetilde{\vee}$ and the repetition quiver $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\widetilde{\vee}}$ is depicted as:



A sequence $\mathfrak{R} = \big((\imath_k, p_k)\big)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ of elements in $\widehat{\blacktriangle}_0^{\sigma}$ is called a *compatible reading* of $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ if it satisfies the following condition ([KO23, §3.3]) :

(i) $(\imath_k, p_k) = (\imath_l, p_l)$ if and only if $k = l$.

(ii) $\{(\imath_k, p_k)\}_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} = \widehat{\blacktriangle}_0^{\sigma}$.

(iii) We have $k < l$ whenever there is an arrow $(\imath_k, p_k) \to (\imath_l, p_l)$ in $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$.

Understanding $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ as a Hasse quiver on $\widehat{\blacktriangle}_0^{\sigma}$ via the partial order $\preceq$ determined by arrows, each compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$ can be interpreted as a completion of the partial order $\preceq$.

Convention. *Throughout this paper, we frequently identify a compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$ with the bijection*

$$\psi_{\mathfrak{R}} \colon \mathbb{Z} \to \mathfrak{R} \qquad \text{defined by } \mathbb{Z} \ni k \mapsto (\imath_k, p_k) \in \widehat{\blacktriangle}_0^{\sigma}.$$

Example 1.5. In this example, we present several compatible readings of $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ by using the $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ of untwisted affine type $B_3^{(1)}$ in Example 1.4 (ii).

(a) By reading $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ from north west to south east, we obtain a compatible reading

$$\big(\ldots, (1,-6), (2,-4), (3,-3), (4,-2), (5,0), (3,-1), (1,-2), (2,0), (3,1), (4,2), (5,4), \ldots\big).$$

(b) By reading $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ from south west to north east, we obtain a compatible reading

$$\big(\ldots, (5,-4), (4,-2), (3,-1), (2,0), (1,2), (3,1), (5,0), (4,2), (3,3), (2,4), (1,6), \ldots\big).$$

(c) By reading $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ from north to south, we obtain a compatible reading

$$\big(\ldots, (2,-4), (5,-4), (3,-3), (1,-2), (4,-2), (3,-1), (2,0), (5,0), (3,1), (1,2), (4,2), \ldots\big).$$

Note that we have the bijection $\mathsf{f}\colon \widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}_0 \to \widehat{I}_0$ given by $(\imath, p) \longmapsto (\bar{\imath}, p)$. Hence we can give a quiver structure on $\widehat{I}_0$ by using the ones of $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ and we sometimes identify $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ (resp.$\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}_0$) and $\widehat{I}_0$ as quivers (resp. as vertices).

For each Q-datum $\mathcal{Q} = (\blacktriangle, \sigma, \xi)$ of $\mathfrak{g}$, there exists a unique bijection

$$\phi_{\mathcal{Q}}\colon \widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}_0 \to \Phi^+_{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}} \times \mathbb{Z},$$

which is defined by using $\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}$ (see [HL15, FO21]).

Let $(\blacktriangle, \sigma, \xi)$ be a Q-datum for $\mathfrak{g}$. We set $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}} = (\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}_0, \Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}_1)$ the full-subquiver of $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ whose set $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}_0$ of vertices is given as follows:

$$\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}_0 := \phi^{-1}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\Phi^+_{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}} \times \{0\}) \subset \widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}_0. \tag{1.6}$$

We call $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}$ the *Auslander–Reiten (AR) quiver* associated with $\mathcal{Q}$. Hence each vertex in $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}$ corresponds to a positive root $\beta \in \Phi^+_{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}$.

Throughout this paper, to give an example of $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}$, we take $\mathcal{Q} = (\blacktriangle, \sigma, \xi)$ and hence a $\mathcal{Q}$-Coxeter element $\tau_{\mathcal{Q}} \in W_{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}} \rtimes \langle \sigma \rangle$ for an untwisted affine type $\mathfrak{g} = X^{(1)}_n$ as follows:

$$\tau_{\mathcal{Q}} = s_1 s_2 \cdots s_{n-1} s_n \sigma \qquad (\text{resp. } \tau = s_1 s_3 s_4 s_2 \vee \ \text{ if } \mathfrak{g} = F^{(1)}_4). \tag{1.7}$$

Example 1.6. In the following quivers, (i) the vertex $\alpha \in \Phi^+_{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}$ corresponds to $(\alpha, 0)$ as in (1.6), (ii) $\alpha \overset{\tau^k_{\mathcal{Q}}}{\dashrightarrow} \beta$ denotes $\tau^k_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta) = \alpha$, whose arrow is *not* contained in $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}_1$.

(1) For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $A^{(1)}_5$ with $\tau_{\mathcal{Q}} = s_1 s_2 s_3 s_4 s_5 \in W_{A_5}$ and $\xi = (\xi_1 = -4, \xi_2 = -3, \xi_3 = -2, \xi_4 = -1, \xi_5 = 0)$, $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}$ in $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}_0$ can be depicted as follows:

$$\begin{tikzcd}[column sep=small]
(\imath \setminus p) & -4 & -3 & -2 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
1 & \llbracket 1 \rrbracket \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 2 \rrbracket \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 3 \rrbracket \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 4 \rrbracket \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 5 \rrbracket \\
2 & & \llbracket 1,2 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 2,3 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 3,4 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 4,5 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] & \\
3 & & & \llbracket 1,3 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 2,4 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 3,5 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] & & \\
4 & & & & \llbracket 1,4 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 2,5 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] & & & \\
5 & & & & & \llbracket 1,5 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] & & & &
\end{tikzcd} \tag{1.8}$$

Here $\llbracket a, b \rrbracket$ $(1 \le a, b \le 5)$ denotes the positive root $\sum_{k=a}^{b} \alpha_k \in \Phi^+_{A_5}$ and $\llbracket a \rrbracket := \alpha_a$.

(2) For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $B^{(1)}_3$ with $\tau_{\mathcal{Q}} = s_1 s_2 s_3 \vee \in W_{A_5} \rtimes \langle \vee \rangle$ and $\xi = (\xi_1 = -6, \xi_2 = -4, \xi_3 = -3, \xi_4 = -2, \xi_5 = -4)$, $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}$ in $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}_0$ can be depicted as follows:

$$\begin{tikzcd}[column sep=small]
(\imath \setminus p) & -6 & -5 & -4 & -3 & -2 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\
1 & \llbracket 1 \rrbracket \arrow[rrrr, dotted, "\tau^2_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[drr] & & & & \llbracket 2 \rrbracket \arrow[rrrr, dotted, "\tau^2_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[drr] & & & & \llbracket 3,5 \rrbracket \arrow[drr] & & & \\
2 & & & \llbracket 1,2 \rrbracket \arrow[urr] \arrow[rrrr, dotted, "\tau^2_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & & & \llbracket 2,5 \rrbracket \arrow[urr] \arrow[rrrr, dotted, "\tau^2_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & & & \llbracket 3,4 \rrbracket \arrow[dr] & \\
3 & & & & \llbracket 1,3 \rrbracket \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 4,5 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] & & \llbracket 2,3 \rrbracket \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[dr] & & \llbracket 4 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] \arrow[rr, dotted, "\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}"] & & \llbracket 3 \rrbracket \\
4 & & & & & \llbracket 1,5 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] \arrow[rrrr, dotted, "\tau^2_{\mathcal{Q}}"] \arrow[drr] & & & & \llbracket 2,4 \rrbracket \arrow[ur] & & & \\
5 & & & \llbracket 5 \rrbracket \arrow[urr] \arrow[rrrr, dotted, "\tau^2_{\mathcal{Q}}"] & & & & \llbracket 1,4 \rrbracket \arrow[urr] & & & & &
\end{tikzcd} \tag{1.9}$$

(3) For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $C_3^{(1)}$ with $\tau_{\mathcal{Q}} = s_1 s_2 s_3 \vee \in W_{D_4} \rtimes \langle \vee \rangle$ and $\xi = (\xi_1 = -4, \xi_2 = -3, \xi_3 = 0, \xi_4 = -2)$, $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}$ in $\widehat{\blacktriangle}_0^{\sigma}$ can be depicted as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccccccc}
(\imath \setminus p) & -4 & -3 & -2 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
1 & \langle 1,-2\rangle & & \langle 2,-3\rangle & & \langle 3,-4\rangle & & \langle 1,4\rangle & & \\
2 & & \langle 1,-3\rangle & & \langle 2,-4\rangle & & \langle 1,3\rangle & & \langle 2,4\rangle & \\
3 & & & & & \langle 1,2\rangle & & & & \langle 3,4\rangle \\
4 & & & \langle 1,-4\rangle & & & & \langle 2,3\rangle & &
\end{array} \tag{1.10}$$

Here $\langle a, \pm b\rangle$ denotes $\varepsilon_a \pm \varepsilon_b \in \Phi^+_{D_4}$ by following the convention in [Bou02].

(4) For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $D_4^{(1)}$ with $\tau_{\mathcal{Q}} = s_1 s_2 s_3 s_4 \in W_{D_4}$ and $\xi = (\xi_1 = -2, \xi_2 = -1, \xi_3 = 0, \xi_4 = 0)$, $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}$ in $\widehat{\blacktriangle}_0^{\sigma}$ can be depicted as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccccc}
(\imath \setminus p) & -2 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
1 & \langle 1,-2\rangle & & \langle 2,-3\rangle & & \langle 1,-3\rangle & & \\
2 & & \langle 1,-3\rangle & & \langle 1,2\rangle & & \langle 2,3\rangle & \\
3 & & & \langle 1,-4\rangle & & \langle 2,4\rangle & & \langle 3,-4\rangle \\
4 & & & \langle 1,4\rangle & & \langle 2,-4\rangle & & \langle 3,4\rangle
\end{array} \tag{1.11}$$

(5) For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $G_2^{(1)}$ with $\tau_{\mathcal{Q}} = s_1 s_2 \widetilde{\vee} \in W_{D_4} \rtimes \langle \widetilde{\vee} \rangle$ and and $\xi = (\xi_1 = -3, \xi_2 = -2, \xi_3 = -1, \xi_4 = 1)$, $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}$ in $\widehat{\blacktriangle}_0^{\sigma}$ can be depicted as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c|cccccccccccc}
(\imath \setminus p) & -3 & -2 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 \\
1 & \langle 1,-2\rangle & & & & & & \langle 1,2\rangle & & & & & \\
2 & & \langle 1,-3\rangle & & \langle 3,-4\rangle & & \langle 1,4\rangle & & \langle 2,-4\rangle & & \langle 3,4\rangle & & \langle 2,-3\rangle \\
3 & & & \langle 1,-4\rangle & & & & & & \langle 2,3\rangle & & & \\
4 & & & & & \langle 1,3\rangle & & & & & & \langle 2,4\rangle &
\end{array} \tag{1.12}$$

Now let us consider a quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ of twisted type; i.e, $\mathfrak{g} = A^{(2)}_{2n-1}, A^{(2)}_{2n}, D^{(2)}_{n+1}, E^{(2)}_6$ and $D^{(3)}_4$. For each *twisted* quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g}^{(t)})$ $(t = 2, 3)$, we assign the finite simple Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}$ of symmetric type as follows:

(1.13)

$\mathfrak{g}$	$A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$ $(n \geq 2)$	$A^{(2)}_{2n}$ $(n \geq 1)$	$D^{(2)}_{n+1}$ $(n \geq 3)$	$E^{(2)}_6$	$D^{(3)}_4$
$\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}$	A_{2n-1}	A_{2n}	D_{n+1}	E_6	D_4

Then we take $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ and $\mathcal{Q}$ for $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g}^{(t)})$ $(t = 2, 3)$ as the ones of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g}^{(1)})$.

1.5. **Subcategories.** For a quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ of untwisted type $\mathfrak{g}^{(1)}$, we can choose a Q-datum $\mathcal{Q} = (\blacktriangle, \sigma, \xi)$ as seen in the previous subsection.

For each $(\imath, p) \in \blacktriangle_0 \times \mathbb{Z}$, we set

$$\mathcal{V}^{(1)}(\imath, p) := \begin{cases} V(\varpi_\imath)_{(-q)^p} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} \text{ is of simply-laced affine type,} \\ V(\varpi_{\bar\imath})_{(-1)^{n+\bar\imath} q_{\mathsf{s}}^p} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} \text{ is of type } B_n^{(1)}, \\ V(\varpi_{\bar\imath})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^p} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} \text{ is of type } C_n^{(1)}, \\ V(\varpi_{\bar\imath})_{(-1)^{i+p} q_{\mathsf{s}}^p} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} \text{ is of type } F_4^{(1)}, \\ V(\varpi_{\bar\imath})_{(-q_{\mathsf{t}})^p} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} \text{ is of type } G_2^{(1)}, \end{cases} \qquad \text{where } q = q_{\mathsf{s}}^2 = q_{\mathsf{t}}^3.$$

For a quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ of twisted type $\mathfrak{g}^{(t)}$ $(t=2,3)$ and $(\imath,p) \in \blacktriangle_0 \times \mathbb{Z}$, we assign the fundamental module $\mathcal{V}^{(t)}(\imath,p)$ $(t=2,3)$ as follows:

$$\mathcal{V}^{(t)}(\imath,p) := V(\varpi_{\pi(\imath)})_{A(\imath,p)},$$

where

$$\pi(\imath) := \begin{cases} \imath & \text{if (i) } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = A_N^{(2)} \text{ and } \imath \le \lceil N/2 \rceil \text{ or (ii) } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = D_{n+1}^{(2)} \text{ and } \imath < n, \\ N+1-\imath & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = A_N^{(2)} \text{ and } \imath > \lceil N/2 \rceil, \\ n & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = D_{n+1}^{(2)} \text{ and } \imath = n, n+1, \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} \pi(1)=\pi(6)=1, \quad \pi(3)=\pi(5)=2, \quad \pi(4)=3, \quad \pi(2)=4 & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = E_6^{(2)}, \\ \pi(1)=\pi(3)=\pi(4)=1, \quad \pi(2)=2 & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}^{(3)} = D_4^{(3)}, \end{cases}$$

and

$$A(\imath,p) := \begin{cases} (-q)^p & \text{if (i) } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = A_N^{(2)} \text{ and } \imath \le \lceil N/2 \rceil \\ & \quad \text{or (ii) } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = E_6^{(2)} \text{ and } \imath = 1,3, \\ (-1)^N(-q)^p & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = A_N^{(2)} \text{ and } \imath > \lceil N/2 \rceil, \\ (\sqrt{-1})^{n+1-\imath}(-q)^p & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = D_{n+1}^{(2)} \text{ and } \imath < n, \\ (-1)^\imath(-q)^p & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = D_{n+1}^{(2)} \text{ and } \imath = n, n+1, \\ -(-q)^p & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = E_6^{(2)} \text{ and } \imath = 5,6, \\ (\sqrt{-1})(-q)^p & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}^{(2)} = E_6^{(2)} \text{ and } \imath = 2,4, \\ \big(\delta_{\imath,1} - \delta_{\imath,2} + \delta_{\imath,3}\omega + \delta_{\imath,4}\omega^2\big)(-q)^p & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}^{(3)} = D_4^{(3)}. \end{cases}$$

Here ω is the third root of unity.

For each quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g}^{(t)})$ $(t=1,2,3)$, its Q-datum $\mathcal{Q} = (\blacktriangle, \sigma, \xi)$ and $(\beta,k) \in \Phi^+_{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}} \times \mathbb{Z}$ with $\phi_{\mathcal{Q}}^{-1}(\beta,k) = (\imath,p) \in \widehat{\blacktriangle}_0^\sigma$, we define

$$\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}(\beta,k) := \mathcal{V}^{(t)}(\imath,p).$$

For notational simplicity, we usually write $\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}(\beta)$ instead of $\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}(\beta,0)$ if $k=0$, and drop ${}^{(t)}$ if there is no danger of confusion.

Note that, for $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, we have

$$\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}(\beta,k) = \mathscr{D}^k \mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}(\beta).$$

Definition 1.7 ([HL15, HL16, KKKO15b, KO18, OS19b]). Let $U_q(\mathfrak{g}^{(t)})$ be a quantum affine algebra $(t = 1, 2$ or $3)$.

(i) We denote by $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$ the smallest abelian full subcategory of the category $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$
 (a) it is stable under subquotient, tensor product and extension,
 (b) it contains $\mathcal{V}^{(t)}(\imath,k)$ for all $(\imath,k) \in \widehat{\blacktriangle}_0^\sigma$.
 Note that the definition of $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$ does not depend on the choice of $\mathcal{Q}$.

(ii) For each $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, we denote by $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}[k]$ the smallest abelian full subcategory of the category $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}^{(t)}}$ such that
 (a) it is stable under subquotient, tensor product and extension,
 (b) it contains $\mathscr{D}^k \mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}(\beta)$ for all $\beta \in \Phi^+_{\mathfrak{g}}$, and the trivial module $\mathbf{1}$.
 When $k=0$, we write $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}$ instead of $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}[0]$ for simplicity. We call $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}[k]$ a *heart* subcategory of $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$.

(iii) For $m \in \mathbb{Z}$, we denote by $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q},\le m}^{(t)}$ the smallest abelian full subcategory of the category $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$

(a) it is stable under subquotient, tensor product and extension,
(b) it contains $\mathscr{D}^s\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}(\beta)$ for all $\beta \in \Phi_{\mathsf{g}}^+$ and $s \le m$.

Similarly, we can define $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q},<m}^{(t)}$, $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q},\ge m}^{(t)}$ and $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q},>m}^{(t)}$, respectively.

Remark 1.8. For each $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, by considering all fundamental modules $\{\mathcal{V}(\imath_s, p_s) \mid 1 \le s \le \ell\}$ in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}[k]$, the full subquiver of $\widehat{\blacktriangle}$ with vertices $\{(\imath_s, p_s) \mid 1 \le s \le \ell\}$ is denoted by $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}[k]$. The quiver $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}[k] \simeq \Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}$ as quivers, $\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}[k] \cap \Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}[l] = \emptyset$ unless $k = l$, and $\bigsqcup_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}[k])_0 = \widehat{\blacktriangle}_0$.

These categories for simply-laced untwisted affine type $\mathfrak{g}^{(1)}$ were introduced in [HL10, HL15]. Note that $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$ is a skeleton category and every skeleton category can be obtained from $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$ by taking a parameter shifts. The Grothendieck ring $K(\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0)$ of $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$ is isomorphic to the *commutative* polynomial ring generated by the classes of modules in $\{\mathscr{D}^k\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}(\beta) \mid \beta \in \Phi_{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}^+,\ k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ [FR99].

Proposition 1.9 ([KKOP24c, Proposition 5.4])**.** *For $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $|m-n| > 1$, if a simple module M is contained in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}[m] \cap \mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}[n]$, then $M \simeq \mathbf{1}$.*

For a fundamental module $V \in \mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$, there exists an $(\imath, p)$ such that $V \simeq \mathcal{V}(\imath, p)$. We set

$$\mathrm{clr}(V) := \imath$$

and call it the *color* of V. Since we fix the parity function ϵ, the color of V is well-defined.

Example 1.10. Using (1.9), we can see that

$$\mathrm{clr}(V(\varpi_2)_{(-1)q_{\mathsf{s}}^{-2}}) = 4 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{clr}(V(\varpi_2)_{(-1)q_{\mathsf{s}}^{4}}) = 2,$$

since $V(\varpi_2)_{(-1)q_{\mathsf{s}}^{-2}} = \mathcal{V}(4,-2)$ and $V(\varpi_2)_{(-1)q_{\mathsf{s}}^{4}} = \mathcal{V}(2,4)$.

2. R-matrices and $\mathbb{Z}$-invariants

In this section, we recall the R-matrix in the representation theory of quantum affine algebra and $\mathbb{Z}$-invariants arising from R-matrix, in which the latter is introduced in [KKOP20].

2.1. R-matrices.

In this subsection, we review the notion of R-matrices on $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules and their coefficients by following [Kas02, §8], [AK97, Appendices A and B] and [KKOP20] mainly.

For modules M and $N \in \mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$, there exists $\mathbf{k}(\!(z)\!) \otimes \mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module isomorphism

$$R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M,N_z} \colon \mathbf{k}(\!(z)\!) \underset{\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]}{\otimes} (M \otimes N_z) \to \mathbf{k}(\!(z)\!) \underset{\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]}{\otimes} (N_z \otimes M)$$

satisfying

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathbf{k}(\!(z)\!) \otimes_{\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]} (M \otimes N \otimes L_z) \arrow[rr, "R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M\otimes N, L_z}"] \arrow[dr, "M \otimes R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{N,L_z}"'] & & \mathbf{k}(\!(z)\!) \otimes_{\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]} (L_z \otimes M \otimes N) \\ & \mathbf{k}(\!(z)\!) \otimes_{\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]} (M \otimes L_z \otimes N) \arrow[ur, "R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M,L_z} \otimes N"'] & \end{tikzcd} \tag{2.1}$$

for $L, M, N \in \mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ and further properties (see [Kas02] for more details). We call $R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M,N_z}$ the *universal R-matrix* of M and N.

For modules M and $N \in \mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$, we say that $R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M,N_z}$ is *rationally renormalizable* if there exists $c_{M,N}(z) \in \mathbf{k}(\!(z)\!)^\times$ such that $c_{M,N}(z)$ is unique up to a multiple of $\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]^\times$,

(i) $R^{\mathrm{ren}}_{M,N_z} := c_{M,N}(z) R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M,N_z} \colon M \otimes N_z \to N_z \otimes M$ and
(ii) $R^{\mathrm{ren}}_{M,N_z}|_{z=x}$ does not vanish for any $x \in \mathbf{k}^\times$.

We call $c_{M,N}(z)$ the *renormalizing coefficient*. In the case, we write

$$\mathbf{r}_{M,N} := R^{\mathrm{ren}}_{M,N_z}|_{z=1} \text{ and call it } R\text{-matrix}.$$

By the definition, $\mathbf{r}_{M,N}$ never vanishes.

Now assume that M and N are non-zero simple $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$. Then the universal R-matrix $R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M,N_z}$ is rationally renormalizable. Furthermore, we have the following: Let u and v be dominant extremal weight vectors of M and N, respectively. Then there exists $a_{M,N}(z) \in \mathbf{k}[[z]]^\times$ such that

$$R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M,N_z}\big(u \otimes v_z\big) = a_{M,N}(z)\big(v_z \otimes u\big). \tag{2.2}$$

Then $R^{\mathrm{norm}}_{M,N_z} := a_{M,N}(z)^{-1} R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M,N_z}$ is a unique $\mathbf{k}(z) \otimes \mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module isomorphism

$$R^{\mathrm{norm}}_{M,N_z} \colon \mathbf{k}(z) \otimes_{\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]} \big(M \otimes N_z\big) \xrightarrow{\;\simeq\;} \mathbf{k}(z) \otimes_{\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]} \big(N_z \otimes M\big)$$

satisfying

$$R^{\mathrm{norm}}_{M,N}\big(u \otimes v_z\big) = v_z \otimes u.$$

We call $a_{M,N}(z)$ the *universal coefficient* of M and N and $R^{\mathrm{norm}}_{M,N_z}$ the *normalized R-matrix*.

Let $d_{M,N}(z) \in \mathbf{k}[z]$ be a monic polynomial of the smallest degree such that the image of $d_{M,N}(z) R^{\mathrm{norm}}_{M,N_z}$ is contained in $N_z \otimes M$. We call $d_{M,N}(z)$ the *denominator* of $R^{\mathrm{norm}}_{M,N}$. Then we have

$$R^{\mathrm{ren}}_{M,N_z} := d_{M,N}(z) R^{\mathrm{norm}}_{M,N} \colon M \otimes N_z \to N_z \otimes M \quad \text{up to a constant multiple of } \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}], \tag{2.3}$$

and the R-matrix

$$\mathbf{r}_{M,N} \colon M \otimes N \to N \otimes M$$

is equal to the specialization of R^{ren}_{M,N_z} at $z = 1$ up to a constant multiple. Thus

$$R^{\mathrm{ren}}_{M,N_z} = \frac{d_{M,N}(z)}{a_{M,N}(z)} R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M,N_z} \quad \text{and} \quad c_{M,N}(z) = \frac{d_{M,N}(z)}{a_{M,N}(z)}.$$

The following theorem tells that the denominators control the representation theory of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$:

Theorem 2.1 ([AK97, Cha02, Kas02, KKKO15a]; see also [KKK15, Theorem 2.2])**.**

(a) *For good modules M, N, the zeros of $d_{M,N}(z)$ belong to $\mathbb{C}[[q^{1/m}]]q^{1/m}$ for some $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$.*

(b) *For simple modules M and N such that one of them is real, M_x and N_y strongly commute to each other if and only if $d_{M,N}(z) d_{N,M}(z^{-1})$ does not vanish at $z = x/y$.*

(c) *Let M_k be a good module with a dominant extremal vector u_k of weight λ_k and $a_k \in \mathbf{k}^\times$ for $k = 1, \ldots, t$. Assume that a_j/a_i is not a zero of $d_{M_i,M_j}(z)$ for any $1 \le i < j \le t$. Then the following statements hold.*
   - (i) *$(M_1)_{a_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes (M_t)_{a_t}$ is generated by $u_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes u_t$.*
   - (ii) *The head of $(M_1)_{a_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes (M_t)_{a_t}$ is simple.*
   - (iii) *Any non-zero submodule of $(M_t)_{a_t} \otimes \cdots \otimes (M_1)_{a_1}$ contains the vector $u_t \otimes \cdots \otimes u_1$.*
   - (iv) *The socle of $(M_t)_{a_t} \otimes \cdots \otimes (M_1)_{a_1}$ is simple.*
   - (v) *$\mathbf{r} \colon (M_1)_{a_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes (M_t)_{a_t} \to (M_t)_{a_t} \otimes \cdots \otimes (M_1)_{a_1}$ be the specialization of $R^{\mathrm{norm}}_{M_1,\ldots,M_t} := \prod_{1 \le j < k \le t} R^{\mathrm{norm}}_{M_j, M_k}$ at $z_k = a_k$. Then the image of $\mathbf{r}$ is simple and it coincides with the head of $(M_1)_{a_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes (M_t)_{a_t}$ and also with the socle of $(M_t)_{a_t} \otimes \cdots \otimes (M_1)_{a_1}$.*

(d) *For a simple integrable $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module M, there exists a finite sequence*

$$\big((i_1, a_1), \ldots, (i_t, a_t)\big) \in I \times \mathbf{k}^\times$$

such that $d_{V(\varpi_{i_k}),V(\varpi_{i_{k'}})}(a_{k'}/a_k) := d_{i_k,i_{k'}}(a_{k'}/a_k) \neq 0$ for $1 \le k < k' \le t$, and M is isomorphic to the head of $V(\varpi_{i_1})_{a_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes V(\varpi_{i_t})_{a_t}$. In particular, M has the dominant extremal weight $\sum_{k=1}^t \varpi_{i_k}$.

For simple modules M and N in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$, let $M \nabla N$ and $M \Delta N$ denote the head and the socle of $M \otimes N$, respectively.

Proposition 2.2 ([KKKO15a, Theorem 3.12])**.** *Let M and N be simple modules in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ and assume that one of them is real.*

(i) $\mathrm{Hom}(M \otimes N, N \otimes M) = \mathbf{k}\mathbf{r}_{M,N}$.
(ii) *$M \otimes N$ and $N \otimes M$ have simple socles and simple heads. Moreover, $\mathrm{Im}(\mathbf{r}_{M,N})$ is isomorphic to $M \nabla N$ and $N \Delta M$.*
(iii) *$M \otimes N$ is simple whenever its head and its socle are isomorphic to each other.*

Proposition 2.3 ([KKKO15a, Corollary 3.11])**.**

(i) *Let M_k ($k \in \{1,2,3\}$) be modules in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$, let $\varphi_1 \colon L \to M_2 \otimes M_3$ and $\varphi_2 \colon M_1 \otimes M_2 \to L'$ be non-zero homomorphism. Assume further M_2 is a simple module. Then the composition*
$$M_1 \otimes L \xrightarrow{M_1 \otimes \varphi_1} M_1 \otimes M_2 \otimes M_3 \xrightarrow{\varphi_2 \otimes M_3} L' \otimes M_3 \quad \textit{does not vanish.}$$
(ii) *Let M_k ($k \in \{1,2,3\}$) be modules in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$, let $\varphi_1 \colon L \to M_1 \otimes M_2$ and $\varphi_2 \colon M_2 \otimes M_3 \to L'$ be non-zero homomorphism. Assume further M_2 is a simple module. The the composition*
$$L \otimes M_3 \xrightarrow{M_1 \otimes \varphi_1} M_1 \otimes M_2 \otimes M_3 \xrightarrow{\varphi_2 \otimes M_3} M_1 \otimes L' \quad \textit{does not vanish.}$$

We call the properties in Proposition 2.3 *quasi-rigidity* (see [KKOP24a, §6.2] for more detail).

Lemma 2.4 ([KKKO15a, Corollary 3.13])**.** *Let L be a real simple module. Then for any simple module X, we have*
$$\begin{aligned} (L \nabla X) \nabla \mathscr{D}L &\simeq X, & \qquad \mathscr{D}^{-1}L \nabla (X \nabla L) &\simeq X, \\ L \nabla (X \nabla \mathscr{D}L) &\simeq X, & \qquad (\mathscr{D}^{-1}L \nabla X) \nabla L &\simeq X. \end{aligned}$$

2.2. **$\mathbb{Z}$-invariants arising from the R-matrix.** In this subsection, we review the $\mathbb{Z}$-invariants arising from R-matrices of quantum affine algebras, which are introduced in [KKOP20].

We set
$$\widetilde{p} := p^{*2} = q^{2\langle c,\rho \rangle} \text{ and } \varphi(z) := \prod_{s \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}} (1 - \widetilde{p}^s z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n \widetilde{p}^{n(n-1)/2}}{\prod_{k=1}^{n}(1-\widetilde{p}^k)} z^n \in \mathbf{k}[[z]].$$

We define the multiplicative subgroup $\mathcal{G}$ in $\mathbf{k}(\!(z)\!)^\times$ containing $\mathbf{k}(z)^\times$ as follows:
$$\mathcal{G} := \left\{ cz^m \prod_{a \in \mathbf{k}^\times} \varphi(az)^{\eta_a} \;\middle|\; \begin{array}{c} c \in \mathbf{k}^\times, \ m \in \mathbb{Z} \\ \eta_a \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ vanishes except finitely many } a\text{'s} \end{array} \right\}.$$

Then it is proved in [KKOP20] that $c_{M,N}(z)$ is contained in $\mathcal{G}$ for rationally renormalizable $R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M,N_z}$.

In [KKOP20, Section 3], the following group homomorphisms are introduced
$$\mathrm{Deg} \colon \mathcal{G} \to \mathbb{Z} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{Deg}^\infty \colon \mathcal{G} \to \mathbb{Z}$$
defined by
$$\mathrm{Deg}(f(z)) := \sum_{a \in \widetilde{p}^{\mathbb{Z}_{\leq 0}}} \eta_a - \sum_{a \in \widetilde{p}^{\mathbb{Z}_{>0}}} \eta_a \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{Deg}^\infty(f(z)) := \sum_{a \in \widetilde{p}^{\mathbb{Z}}} \eta_a$$
for $f(z) = cz_m \prod \varphi(az)^{\eta_a} \in \mathcal{G}$. Here $\widetilde{p}^S := \{\widetilde{p}^k \mid k \in S\}$ for a subset S of $\mathbb{Z}$.

Definition 2.5 ([KKOP20, Definition 3.6, 3.14])**.** Let $M, N \in \mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$.

(1) If $R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{M,N_z}$ is rationally renormalizable, we define the integers $\Lambda(M,N)$ and $\Lambda^\infty(M,N)$ by
$$\Lambda(M,N) = \mathrm{Deg}(c_{M,N}(z)) \quad \text{and} \quad \Lambda^\infty(M,N) = \mathrm{Deg}^\infty(c_{M,N}(z)).$$

(2) For simple modules M and N in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$, we define the integer $\mathfrak{d}(M,N)$ by

$$\mathfrak{d}(M,N) = \frac{1}{2}\big(\Lambda(M,N) + \Lambda(\mathscr{D}^{-1}M,N)\big).$$

Proposition 2.6 ([KKOP20, Proposition 3.16])**.** *For simple modules M and N in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$, we have*

$$\mathfrak{d}(M,N) = \mathrm{zero}_{z=1}\left(d_{M,N}(z)d_{N,M}(z^{-1})\right),$$

where $\mathrm{zero}_{z=a} f(z)$ denotes the order of zero of $f(z)$ at $z=a$. In particular $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) \ge 0$

Proposition 2.7 ([KKOP20, Corollary 3.17])**.** *For simple modules $M, N \in \mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$, assume that one of them is real.*

(a) *$M \otimes N$ has a simple head and a simple socle.*
(b) *$\mathfrak{d}(M,N) = 0$, then $M \nabla N \simeq M \Delta N$ and hence $M \otimes N$ is simple.*

Proposition 2.8 ([KO18, Lemma 7.3])**.** *Let M and N be simple modules in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$. Assume that one of them is real and $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) = 1$. Then we have an exact sequence*

$$0 \to M \Delta N \to M \otimes N \to M \nabla N \to 0.$$

In particular, $M \otimes N$ has composition length 2.

Proposition 2.9 ([KKOP20, Corollary 4.2])**.** *For simple modules $L, M, N \in \mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$, we have*

$$\mathfrak{d}(S,L) \le \mathfrak{d}(M,L) + \mathfrak{d}(N,L)$$

for any simple subquotient S of $M \otimes N$.

Proposition 2.10 ([KKOP24c, Lemma 2.28])**.** *For real simple modules M and N, if $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) \le 1$, then $M \nabla N$ is real.*

Proposition 2.11 ([KKOP20, KKOP24c])**.** *Let M and N be simple modules in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$. Then we have the following:*

(i) *$\mathfrak{d}(M,N) \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 0}$ and $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) = \frac{1}{2}\big(\Lambda(M,N) + \Lambda(N,M)\big) = \mathfrak{d}(N,M)$.*
(ii) *$\Lambda(M,N) = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{k+\delta(k<0)}\mathfrak{d}(M,\mathscr{D}^k N)$.*
(iii) *$\Lambda(M,N) = \Lambda(\mathscr{D}^{-1}N, M) = \Lambda(N, \mathscr{D}M)$.*
(iv) *$\Lambda^\infty(M,N) = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^k \mathfrak{d}(M,\mathscr{D}^k N)$*

Lemma 2.12 ([KKOP24c, Corollary 2.25])**.** *Let L, M be real simple modules and X a simple module.*

(i) *If $\mathfrak{d}(L,M) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}L, M) = 0$, then we have $\mathfrak{d}(L, X \nabla M) = \mathfrak{d}(L,X)$.*
(ii) *If $\mathfrak{d}(L,M) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}L, M) = 0$, then we have $\mathfrak{d}(L, M \nabla X) = \mathfrak{d}(L,X)$.*

Proposition 2.13 ([KKOP24b, Proposition 2.25])**.** *Let M, N and L be simple $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules such that L is real. Assume that*

(i) *$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}M, L) = 0$,*
(ii) *$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}L, N) = 0$, and*
(iii) *$M \otimes L \otimes N$ has a simple head.*

Then we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(L, \mathrm{hd}(M \otimes L \otimes N)) = \mathfrak{d}(L, M \nabla L) + \mathfrak{d}(L, L \nabla N).$$

Lemma 2.14 ([KKOP21, Corollary 3.18])**.** *Let L be a real simple module and M be a module in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$. Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 0}$ and assume that any simple subquotient S of M satisfies $\mathfrak{d}(L,S) \le n$. Then any simple subquotient K of $L \otimes M$ satisfies $\mathfrak{d}(L,K) < n$. In particular, any simple subquotient of $L^{\otimes n} \otimes M$ strongly commutes with L.*

2.3. **Normal sequences and root modules.** A sequence $\underline{L}$ of simple modules is called a *normal sequence* if the composition of R-matrices

$$\mathbf{r}_{L_r,\dots,L_1} := \prod_{1\le i<k\le r} \mathbf{r}_{L_k,L_i} = (\mathbf{r}_{L_2,L_1}) \circ \cdots \circ (\mathbf{r}_{L_{r-1},L_1} \circ \cdots \circ \mathbf{r}_{L_{r-1},L_{r-2}}) \circ (\mathbf{r}_{L_r,L_1} \circ \cdots \circ \mathbf{r}_{L_r,L_{r-1}})$$
$$: L_r \otimes \cdots \otimes L_1 \to L_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes L_r \text{ does not vanish.}$$

An ordered sequence of simple modules $\underline{L} = (L_r, L_{r-1} \dots, L_1)$ in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ is called *almost real*, if all L_i $(1 \le i \le r)$ are real except for at most one.

Lemma 2.15 ([KK19, KKOP23]). *Let $\underline{L} = (L_r, \dots, L_1)$ be an almost real sequence. If $\underline{L}$ is normal, then*

$$\text{the image of } \mathbf{r}_{\underline{L}} \text{ is simple and coincides with the head of } L_r \otimes \cdots \otimes L_1 \text{ and also with the socle of } L_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes L_r. \tag{2.4}$$

Moreover, $\underline{L}$ is normal if and only if either

(i) *$\underline{L}' = (L_{r-1}, \dots, L_1)$ is a normal sequence and $\Lambda\big(L_r, \mathrm{Im}(\mathbf{r}_{\underline{L}'})\big) = \sum_{k=1}^{r-1} \Lambda(L_r, L_k)$, or*
(ii) *$\underline{L}'' = (L_r, \dots, L_2)$ is a normal sequence and $\Lambda\big(\mathrm{Im}(\mathbf{r}_{\underline{L}''}), L_1\big) = \sum_{k=2}^{r} \Lambda(L_k, L_1)$.*

Proposition 2.16 ([KKOP25b, Proposition 1.10]). *Let $\underline{L} = (L_1, \dots, L_r)$ be an almost real normal sequence.*

(i) *Any simple subquotient S of $L_2 \otimes \cdots \otimes L_r$ satisfies $\Lambda(L_1, S) \le \sum_{k=2}^{r} \Lambda(L_1, L_k)$.*
(ii) *Any simple subquotient S of $L_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes L_{r-1}$ satisfies $\Lambda(S, L_r) \le \sum_{k=1}^{r-1} \Lambda(L_k, L_r)$.*
(iii) *$\mathrm{hd}(L_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes L_r)$ appears only once in the composition series of $L_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes L_r$.*

Lemma 2.17 ([KKOP20, Lemma 4.3, Lemma 4.17]; [KKOP24c, Lemma 2.24]). *Let L, M, N be simple modules in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ that are all real except for at most one.*

(a) *Assume that one of the following condition holds:*
   (i) *$\mathfrak{d}(L, M) = 0$ and L is real,*
   (ii) *$\mathfrak{d}(M, N) = 0$ and N is real,*
   (iii) *$\mathfrak{d}(L, \mathscr{D}^{-1}N) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}L, N) = 0$ and L or N is real,*
   then (L, M, N) is a normal sequence.
(b) *Assume that L is real.*
   (iv) *(L, M, N) is normal if and only if $(M, N, \mathscr{D}L)$ is normal.*
   (v) *$\mathfrak{d}(L, M \nabla N) = \mathfrak{d}(L, M) + \mathfrak{d}(L, N)$ if and only if (L, M, N) and (M, N, L) are normal.*

Definition 2.18 ([KKOP24c, KKOP24b]). Let (M, N) be an ordered pair of simple modules in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$.

(1) We call the pair *unmixed* if
$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}M, N) = 0$$
and *strongly unmixed* if
$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^k M, N) = 0 \quad \text{for any } k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}.$$
(2) An almost real sequence $\underline{M} = (M_s, M_{s-1}, \dots, M_1)$ is said to be *(strongly) unmixed* if (M_k, M_i) is (strongly) unmixed for all $s \ge k > i \ge 1$.

Proposition 2.19 ([KKOP24c]).

(a) *Any unmixed almost real sequence $\underline{M} = (M_s, M_{s-1}, \dots, M_1)$ is normal.*
(b) *For a strongly unmixed almost real sequence $\underline{M} = (M_s, M_{s-1}, \dots, M_1)$,*
$$\big(\mathrm{hd}(M_s \otimes M_{s-1} \otimes \cdots M_k), \mathrm{hd}(M_{k-1} \otimes M_{k-1} \otimes \cdots M_1)\big)$$
is strongly unmixed for any $1 < k \le r$.

We say a real simple module L a *root module* if

$$\mathfrak{d}(L, \mathscr{D}^k(L)) = \delta(k = \pm 1) \quad \text{for any } k \in \mathbb{Z}. \tag{2.5}$$

Proposition 2.20 ([KKOP24b, Proposition 2.28]). *Every fundamental module is a root module.*

For the rest of this subsection, we take root modules L, L' satisfying

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^k L, L') = \delta(k = 0) \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{Z}. \tag{2.6}$$

We call a pair of root modules satisfying (2.6) a *$\mathfrak{sl}_3$-pair*.

Lemma 2.21 ([KKOP24c, Lemma 3.8, Lemma 3.9]). *We have*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^k L, L \nabla L') = \delta(k = 1) \quad \textit{and} \quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^k L, L' \nabla L) = \delta(k = -1).$$

Furthermore, the simple module $L \nabla L'$ is a root module.

Lemma 2.22 ([KKOP24c, Lemma 3.10]). *Let X be a simple module.*

(i) *If $k \neq 0, 1$, then*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^k L, L' \nabla X) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^k L, X).$$

As for $k = 0$ and 1, one and only one of the following two statements is true.

(a) $\mathfrak{d}(L, L' \nabla X) = \mathfrak{d}(L, X)$ *and* $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}L, L' \nabla X) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}L, X) - 1$,

(b) $\mathfrak{d}(L, L' \nabla X) = \mathfrak{d}(L, X) + 1$ *and* $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}L, L' \nabla X) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}L, X)$.

(ii) *If $k \neq -1, 0$, then*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^k L, X \nabla L') = \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^k L, X).$$

As for $k = -1$ and 0, one and only one of the following two statements is true.

(c) $\mathfrak{d}(L, X \nabla L') = \mathfrak{d}(L, X)$ *and* $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}L, X \nabla L') = \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}L, X) - 1$,

(d) $\mathfrak{d}(L, X \nabla L') = \mathfrak{d}(L, X) + 1$ *and* $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}L, X \nabla L') = \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}L, X)$.

3. KR modules, i-box combinatorics and Dorey's rule

In this section, we first recall the KR modules in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}^0$ and interpret them in terms of i-boxes, recently introduced in [KKOP24b]. Then, using i-boxes, we investigate strongly commuting conditions of two KR modules in terms of their (extended) reaches. In the final subsection, we recall the generalized Dorey's rule among the fundamental modules.

3.1. Kirillov–Reshetikhin modules.

Note that the simple objects in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ are parameterized by I_0-tuples of polynomials $\mathcal{P} = (\mathcal{P}_i(u))_{i \in I_0}$, where $\mathcal{P}_i(u) \in \mathbf{k}[u]$ and $\mathcal{P}_i(0) = 1$ for $i \in I_0$ [CP95a, CP98]. We denote by $(\mathcal{P}_i^V(u))_{i \in I_0}$ the polynomials corresponding to a simple module V, and call $(\mathcal{P}_i^V(u))_{i \in I_0}$ the *Drinfel'd polynomials* of V. The Drinfel'd polynomials $(\mathcal{P}_i^V(u))_{i \in I_0}$ are determined by the eigenvalues of the simultaneously commuting actions of some *Drinfel'd generators* of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ on a subspace of V (see, e.g., [CP95a] for more details).

A *Kirillov–Reshetikhin module* (KR module), denoted by $W_{m,a}^{(k)}$ for $k \in I_0$, $m \geq 1$, and $a \in \mathbf{k}^\times$, is a simple module of dominant extremal weight $m\varpi_k$ in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ whose Drinfel'd polynomials $\mathcal{P} = (\mathcal{P}_i, \mid i \in I_0)$ are

$$\mathcal{P}_i(u) = \delta_{i,k}(1 - au)(1 - aq_k^2 u)(1 - aq_k^4 u) \cdots (1 - aq_k^{2m-2} u) + (1 - \delta_{i,k}) \quad (i \in I_0)$$

unless $k = n$ and $\mathfrak{g} = A_{2n}^{(2)}$, in which case

$$\mathcal{P}_i(u) = \delta_{i,n}(1 - au)(1 - aq^2 u)(1 - aq^4 u) \cdots (1 - aq^{2m-2} u) + \delta(i \neq n).$$

For any $a \in \mathbf{k}^\times$, it is well-known that the sequence of fundamental modules

$$(V(\varpi_k)_{a(-\check{q}_k)^{2m}}, \ldots, V(\varpi_k)_{a(-\check{q}_k)^2}, V(\varpi_k)_a)$$

is contained in the same skeleton category and unmixed. Hence it is a normal sequence for $m \geq 1$ and $k \in I_0$. Here $\check{q}_k := q_k$ unless $\mathfrak{g} = A_{2n}^{(2)}$ and $k = n$, in which case $\check{q}_n = q$. We denote $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) := W^{(k)}_{m,(-\check{q}_k)^{1-m}}$ for $k \in I_0$ and $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$, which can be constructed as

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \simeq \begin{cases} \mathrm{hd}\left(V(\varpi_k)_{(-q_k)^{m-1}} \otimes V(\varpi_k)_{(-q_k)^{m-3}} \otimes \cdots \otimes V(\varpi_k)_{(-q_k)^{1-m}}\right) & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} \text{ is untwisted,} \\ \mathrm{hd}\left(V(\varpi_k)_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes V(\varpi_k)_{(-q)^{m-3}} \otimes \cdots \otimes V(\varpi_k)_{(-q)^{1-m}}\right) & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

(see also [Her10a]). It is also well-known that $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_a$ is a real simple prime module and $\mathscr{D}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_a) \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{*m}})_{a(p^*)}$ (see [Cha02, (2.20)]).

By Proposition 2.19 and the definition of $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})$, we have surjective homomorphisms as follows:

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-t}})_{(-\check{q}_k)^t} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^t})_{(-\check{q}_k)^{t-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}), \tag{3.1}$$

for $k \in I_0$, $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 2}$ and $m > t \geq 1$. We call the homomorphism (3.1) a *fusion rule*.

The branching rule of $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_a$ to $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules is known [Cha01, Her06, Her10a, Nak03] (see also, e.g., [Oka13, Scr20]). Let us describe some particular cases. We call a node $k \in I_0$ *special* if there exists an automorphism ψ of the Dynkin diagram of $\mathfrak{g}$ such that $k = \psi(0)$, in which case $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \simeq V(m\Lambda_k)$ (as $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules) [KKM+92b, Sec. 1]. When $\mathfrak{g}$ is dual to an untwisted affine type (including all simply-laced types), then we additionally call such k *minuscule* and can be classified by $\langle \alpha^\vee, \Lambda_i \rangle \leq 2$ for all positive roots α of $\mathfrak{g}_0$, where $\alpha^\vee$ denotes the corresponding dual root. When k is the adjoint node (when $\mathfrak{g}$ is not type $A_n^{(1)}$), then $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \simeq \bigoplus_{s=0}^m V(s\Lambda_k)$ [KKM+92b, Sec. 1]. If $\langle \alpha^\vee, \Lambda_i \rangle \leq 2$ for all positive roots α, then this decomposition is multiplicity free, which is true for all $k \in I_0$ in nonexceptional affine types.

Note that KR module $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_a$ ($a \in \mathbf{k}^\times$) with $m = 1$ is a fundamental module. For $k, l \in I_0$, the universal coefficient $a_{l,k}(z) := a_{V(\varpi_l),V(\varpi_k)}(z)$ in (2.2) is described as follows (see [AK97, Appendix A]):

$$a_{l,k}(z) \equiv \frac{\prod_\nu (p^* y_\nu z; q)_\infty (p^* \overline{y_\nu} z; q)_\infty}{\prod_\nu (x_\nu z; q)_\infty (p^{*2} \overline{x_\nu} z; q)_\infty} \qquad (\mathrm{mod}\ \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]^\times), \tag{3.2}$$

where $(y; x)_\infty = \prod_{s=0}^\infty (1 - y^s x)$,

$$d_{l,k}(z) = \prod_\nu (z - x_\nu) \qquad \text{and} \qquad d_{l^*,k}(z) = \prod_\nu (z - y_\nu).$$

Here and after, for $f(z), g(z) \in \mathbf{k}(\!(z)\!)$, we write

$$f(z) \equiv g(z) \quad \text{if } f(z)/g(z) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]^\times.$$

Note that the denominators of the normalized R-matrices $d_{l,k}(z)$, and hence the universal coefficients $a_{l,k}(z)$, were calculated in [AK97, DO94, KKK15, Oh15] for classical affine types and in [OS19a, OS19b] for exceptional affine types.

Equation (3.2) can be generalized to KR modules for $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p})$ and $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})$ ($m, p \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$) by following the same argument in [AK97, Appendix A]:

$$a_{l^p,k^m}(z) := a_{\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}),\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})}(z) \equiv \frac{\prod_\nu (p^* y_\nu z; q)_\infty (p^* \overline{y_\nu} z; q)_\infty}{\prod_\nu (x_\nu z; q)_\infty (p^{*2} \overline{x_\nu} z; q)_\infty} \qquad (\mathrm{mod}\ \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]^\times), \tag{3.3}$$

where

$$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) := d_{\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}),\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})}(z) = \prod_\nu (z - x_\nu), \quad d_{(l^*)^p,k^m}(z) := d_{\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l^*)^p}),\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})}(z) = \prod_\nu (z - y_\nu).$$

The following lemmas are easily checked.

Lemma 3.1 (cf. [Cha02]). *For $l, k \in I_0$, assume that the zeros of $d_{l^p,k^m}(z)$ belong to $\mathbb{C}[[q^{1/m}]]q^{1/m}$ for some $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$. Then we have*

$$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) \equiv d_{k^m,l^p}(z) \pmod{\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]^\times}.$$

Remark 3.2. As a consequence of the result of this paper, we can conclude that $d_{l^p,k^m}(z)$ belong to $\mathbb{C}[[q^{1/m}]]q^{1/m}$ for all classical affine types (see Section 6.2).

Lemma 3.3. *Let k' (resp. l') be in the orbit of k (resp. l) under some (classical type) Dynkin diagram automorphism. Then*

$$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = d_{(l')^p,(k')^m}(z).$$

The following proposition is one of the main ingredients of this paper.

Proposition 3.4 ([AK97, Lemma C.15]). *Let M, M', M'' and N be simple $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-modules. Assume that we have a surjective $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-homomorphism $M' \otimes M'' \twoheadrightarrow M$. Then we have*

$$\frac{d_{N,M'}(z)d_{N,M''}(z)a_{N,M}(z)}{d_{N,M}(z)a_{N,M'}(z)a_{N,M''}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}] \tag{3.4a}$$

and

$$\frac{d_{M',N}(z)d_{M'',N}(z)a_{M,N}(z)}{d_{M,N}(z)a_{M',N}(z)a_{M'',N}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{3.4b}$$

3.2. ***i*-boxes and T-systems.** Recall that for each quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$, we fix $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}$ and $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma$. Also we can choose a compatible reading

$$\mathfrak{R} = (\ldots, (\imath_{-1}, p_{-1}), (\imath_0, p_0), (\imath_1, p_1), \ldots) \text{ of } \widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma.$$

Throughout this subsection, we fix a compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$ and recall Convention 1.4. Thus we skip ${}^{\mathfrak{R}}$ or ${}_{\mathfrak{R}}$ in notations if there is no danger of confusion.

For each $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, we define the fundamental module

$$\mathfrak{R}[k] := \mathcal{V}(\imath_k, p_k), \quad \text{where } \psi_{\mathfrak{R}}(k) = (\imath_k, p_k). \tag{3.5}$$

Proposition 3.5 ([KKOP24c, Proposition 5.7]). *For any $a < b$, the ordered pair $(\mathfrak{R}[b], \mathfrak{R}[a])$ is strongly unmixed.*

For $s \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $\jmath \in \blacktriangle_0$, we define

$$\begin{aligned} s^+_{\mathfrak{R}} &:= \min\{t \mid s < t,\ \imath_t = \imath_s\}, & s^-_{\mathfrak{R}} &:= \max\{t \mid t < s,\ \imath_t = \imath_s\}, \\ s_{\mathfrak{R}}(\jmath)^+ &:= \min\{t \mid s \le t,\ \imath_t = \jmath\}, & s_{\mathfrak{R}}(\jmath)^- &:= \max\{t \mid t \le s,\ \imath_t = \jmath\}. \end{aligned} \tag{3.6}$$

Lemma 3.6 ([KKOP25a, §6.1]). *Let $\mathfrak{R}$ be a compatible reading of $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma$.*

(i) $p_{s^+} = p_s + 2d_{\bar{\imath}}$.
(ii) $p_t = p_s + \min(d_{\overline{\imath_s}}, d_{\overline{\imath_t}})$ *if* $d_{\blacktriangle}(\imath_s, \imath_t) = 1$ *and* $t^- < s < t < s^+$.
(iii) $p_t - (p_s + 2) \in 2d_{\overline{\imath_s}}\mathbb{Z}$ *if* $s, t \in \mathbb{Z}$ *satisfies* $\imath_t = \sigma(\imath_s)$.
(iv) *Let* $\imath_s, \imath_t \in \blacktriangle_0$ *with* $d_{\blacktriangle}(\imath_s, \imath_t) = 1$. *Then*
  (a) $p_s < p_t$ *if and only if* $s < t$.
  (b) $p_s - p_t - \min(d_{\overline{\imath_s}}, d_{\overline{\imath_t}}) \in 2\min(d_{\overline{\imath_s}}, d_{\overline{\imath_t}})\mathbb{Z}$.

Definition 3.7 ([KKOP24b, Definition 4.14]).

(1) We say that an interval $[a, b]$ is an *i-box associated with* $\mathfrak{R}$ if $-\infty < a \le b < +\infty$ and $\imath_a = \imath_b$. We sometimes write it as $[a, b]^{\mathfrak{R}}$ to emphasize that it is associated with $\mathfrak{R}$.
(2) For an i-box $[a, b]$, we set

$$|[a, b]|_\phi := \big|\{s \mid s \in [a, b] \text{ and } \imath_a = \imath_s = \imath_b\}\big|.$$

(3) For an i-box $[a,b]$, we define
$$\mathfrak{R}[a,b] := \mathrm{hd}(\mathfrak{R}[b] \otimes \mathfrak{R}[b^-] \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathfrak{R}[a^+] \otimes \mathfrak{R}[a]).$$

By Proposition 3.5 and Lemma 3.6, the sequence of root modules $(\mathfrak{R}[b], \mathfrak{R}[b^-], \dots, \mathfrak{R}[a^+], \mathfrak{R}[a])$ is normal and $\mathfrak{R}[a,b]$ is a KR module. Note that $\mathrm{clr}(\mathfrak{R}[a,b])$ of $\mathfrak{R}[a,b]$ is canonically defined as $\imath_a = \imath_b$.

In order to compute the $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants between KR modules in the sequel, we introduce the following definitions.

Definition 3.8. Let $[a,b]$ be an i-box associated with $\mathfrak{R}$.

(i) For a KR module $\mathfrak{R}[a,b]$, we call an interval
$$\mathrm{rch}(\mathfrak{R}[a,b]) := [\mathbf{p}_a, \mathbf{p}_b]$$
the *reach* of $\mathfrak{R}[a,b]$. Here we use bold bracket $[\ ,\ ]$ to distinguish it with an i-box $[\ ,\ ]$ associated with $\mathfrak{R}$ and to emphasize it as a reach in $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$.

(ii) For $p \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $\imath \in \blacktriangle_0$, we set
$$p_{\le}(\imath) := \max\{r \mid r \le p,\ (\imath, r) \in \widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}_0) \quad \text{and} \quad p_{\ge}(\imath) := \min\{r \mid r \ge p,\ (\imath, r) \in \widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}_0).$$
In particular, note that $s_{\mathfrak{R}}(\imath)^+$ (resp. $s_{\mathfrak{R}}(\imath)^-$) in (3.6) is different from $p_{\ge}(\imath)$ (resp. $p_{\le}(\imath)$) as the former depends on $\mathfrak{R}$ while the latter do not.

(iii) For a KR module $\mathfrak{R}[a,b]$ with its reach $[\mathbf{p}_a, \mathbf{p}_b]$ and $\imath_a = \imath$, and $\jmath \in \blacktriangle_0$, we call an interval
$$\mathrm{exrch}_{\jmath}(\mathfrak{R}[a,b]) := [(\widetilde{p}_a)_{\le}(\jmath) - 2d_{\bar{\jmath}},\ (\widetilde{p}_b)_{\ge}(\jmath) + 2d_{\bar{\jmath}}] \tag{3.7}$$
the *$\jmath$-extended reach* of $\mathfrak{R}[a,b]$, where $\widetilde{p}_a := p_a - \widetilde{d}_{\blacktriangle,\sigma}(\imath,\jmath)$ and $\widetilde{p}_b := p_b + \widetilde{d}_{\blacktriangle,\sigma}(\imath,\jmath)$.

Note that, for a given KR module M in $\mathscr{C}^0_{\mathfrak{g}}$, its reach and extended reaches do not depend on the choice of a compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$.

Example 3.9. Let us consider the repetition quiver $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^{\sigma}$ of type $B_3^{(1)}$ given in Example 1.4(ii).

(i) For $p = -4 \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $\imath = 1 \in \blacktriangle_0$, we have $p_{\le}(\imath) = -6$ and $p_{\ge}(\imath) = -2$.

(ii) Let us consider the compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$ in Example 1.5 (b) with $(\imath_1, p_1) = (2,0)$. Then we have $\mathrm{rch}(\mathfrak{R}[0,3]) = [-1,1]$, $\mathrm{exrch}_3(\mathfrak{R}[0,3]) = [-3,3]$ $\mathrm{exrch}_1(\mathfrak{R}[-2,4]) = [-13,10]$ and $\mathrm{exrch}_5(\mathfrak{R}[-1,5]) = [-8,8]$.

Proposition 3.10 ([KKOP24b])**.** *Let $[a,b]$ an i-box associated with a compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$.*

(i) *For $s \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $a^- < s < b^+$, we have $\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[a,b], \mathfrak{R}[s]) = 0$.*

(ii) *We have $\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[b^+], \mathfrak{R}[a,b]) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[a^-], \mathfrak{R}[a,b]) = 1$.*

(iii) *We have $\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[a,b], \mathfrak{R}[a^-, b^-]) = 1$.*

(iv) *We have $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathfrak{R}[b], \mathfrak{R}[a,b]) = 1$ and $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}\mathfrak{R}[a], \mathfrak{R}[a,b]) = 1$.*

Definition 3.11. We say that i-boxes $[a_1,b_1]$ and $[a_2,b_2]$ *commute* if we have either
$$a_1^- < a_2 \le b_2 < b_1^+ \quad \text{or} \quad a_2^- < a_1 \le b_1 < b_2^+.$$

Theorem 3.12 ([KKOP24b])**.** *For a compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$, if two i-boxes $[a_1,b_1]$ and $[a_2,b_2]$ commute, then $\mathfrak{R}[a_1,b_1]$ and $\mathfrak{R}[a_2,b_2]$ commute.*

Recall the two extremal compatible readings in Example 1.5 (a) and (b). Then, using Lemma 3.6 and terms of reaches, Theorem 3.12 can be re-expressed as follows: For KR modules W_1 and W_2 strongly commute if either
$$\text{(i)}\ \ p'_{a_2} < p_{a_1} \le p_{b_1} < p'_{b_2} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{(ii)}\ \ p'_{a_1} < p_{a_2} \le p_{b_2} < p'_{b_1}, \tag{3.8}$$
where
$$W_u = \mathfrak{R}[a_u, b_u] \text{ with } \imath_{a_u} = \imath_{b_u} = \imath_u, \quad \mathrm{rch}(W_u) = [p_{a_u}, p_{b_u}], \quad \text{and } \mathrm{exrch}_{\imath_v}(W_u) = [p'_{a_u}, p'_{b_u}]$$
for $\{u,v\} = \{1,2\}$ and some compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$.

Theorem 3.13 ([Nak04, Her06]; see also [KKOP24b, §4.6]). *For an arbitrary quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$, a compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$ of $\widehat{\blacktriangle}^\sigma$ and an arbitrary i-box $[a,b]^{\mathfrak{R}}$ such that $a<b$, we have a short exact sequence*

$$0 \to \bigotimes_{\jmath\in\blacktriangle_0;\ d(\imath_a,\jmath)=1} \mathfrak{R}[a(\jmath)^+, b(\jmath)^-] \to \mathfrak{R}[a^+,b]\otimes\mathfrak{R}[a,b^-] \to \mathfrak{R}[a,b]\otimes\mathfrak{R}[a^+,b^-] \to 0, \tag{3.9}$$

where the left and right terms are real simple modules.

We call the exact sequence in (3.9) a *T-system*. In Appendix C, we present the T-systems for all untwisted affine types.

3.3. **Generalized Dorey's rule.** In this subsection, we review the morphisms

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})}\left(V(\varpi_i)_a\otimes V(\varpi_j)_b, V(\varpi_k)_c\right) \quad \text{for } i,j,k\in I_0 \text{ and } a,b,c\in\mathbf{k}^\times \tag{3.10}$$

that are studied by [CP96b, FH15, KKK15, Oh15, Oh19, YZ11]. The morphisms in (3.10) are called *Dorey's rule* due to their origin from the work of Dorey [Dor91, Dor93].

We keep the notation $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}$ for a given $\mathfrak{g}_n^{(t)}$ as defined in (1.5) and (1.13).

Proposition 3.14 ([BKM14, Lemma 2.6]). *Let $\mathbf{g}$ be a finite simple Lie algebra. For $\gamma\in\Phi^+_{\mathbf{g}}\setminus\Pi_{\mathbf{g}}$ and any $\widetilde{w}_0$ of $w_0\in W_{\mathbf{g}}$, a $[\widetilde{w}_0]$-minimal exponent of γ is indeed a pair (α,β) for some $\alpha,\beta\in\Phi^+_{\mathbf{g}}$ such that $\alpha+\beta=\gamma$.*

Recall the exponent $\underline{m}=\{\underline{m}_\beta\}_{\beta\in\Phi^+}\in\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^{\Phi^+}$ in §1.3. For a reduced expression $\widetilde{w}_0$ of w_0 adapted to a Q-datum $\mathcal{Q}$, we set

$$\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\underline{m}) := \mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta_\ell^{\widetilde{w}_0})^{\otimes m_{\beta_\ell}}\otimes\cdots\otimes\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta_2^{\widetilde{w}_0})^{\otimes m_{\beta_2}}\otimes\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta_1^{\widetilde{w}_0})^{\otimes m_{\beta_1}}.$$

Dorey's rule for affine Kac-Moody algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ can be described as follows.

Theorem 3.15 ([CP96b, Oh17, Oh16, Oh19, KO18, OS19b]). *For a quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$, let (i,x), (j,y), $(k,z)\in I_0\times\mathbf{k}^\times$. Then*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})}\left(V(\varpi_j)_y\otimes V(\varpi_i)_x, V(\varpi_k)_z\right)\neq 0$$

if and only if there exists a Q-datum $\mathcal{Q}$ of $\mathfrak{g}$ and $\alpha,\beta,\gamma\in\Phi^+_{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}$ such that

(i) *$\{\alpha,\beta\}$ is a pair of positive roots such that $\alpha\prec_{[\mathcal{Q}]}\beta$ and $\alpha+\beta=\gamma$,*
(ii) *$V(\varpi_j)_y=\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\alpha)_t$, $V(\varpi_i)_x=\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta)_t$, $V(\varpi_k)_z=\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\gamma)_t$ for some $t\in\mathbf{k}^\times$.*

Furthermore the followings holds:

(1) *Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be of affine type $A_n^{(t)}$, $D_n^{(t)}$ or $E_{6,7,8}^{(t)}$ $(t=1,2,3)$, and $\mathcal{Q}$ be its Q-datum. Assume that $\underline{p}=\{\alpha,\beta\}$ is a non $[\mathcal{Q}]$-simple pair such that $\alpha\prec_{[\mathcal{Q}]}\beta$. Then there exits a unique $[\mathcal{Q}]$-simple exponent $\underline{s}=(\gamma_1,\ldots,\gamma_u)$ such that $\underline{s}=\mathrm{soc}_{[\mathcal{Q}]}(\underline{p})$ and*

$$\mathrm{hd}(\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\alpha)\otimes\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta))\simeq\mathrm{soc}(\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta)\otimes\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\alpha))\simeq\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\underline{s}) \text{ is simple.}$$

(2) *Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be of affine type $B_n^{(1)}$, $C_n^{(1)}$, $F_4^{(1)}$ or $G_2^{(1)}$, and $\mathcal{Q}$ be its Q-datum. Let $\underline{p}=(\alpha,\beta)$ be a non $[\mathcal{Q}]$-simple pair such that $\alpha\prec_{[\mathcal{Q}]}\beta$, then the following holds:*

 (a) *if $\mathrm{dist}_{[\mathcal{Q}]}(\underline{p})=1$, then we have*

$$\mathrm{hd}(\mathcal{V}^{(1)}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\alpha)\otimes\mathcal{V}^{(1)}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta))\simeq\mathrm{soc}(\mathcal{V}^{(1)}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta)\otimes\mathcal{V}^{(1)}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\alpha))\simeq\mathcal{V}^{(1)}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\mathrm{soc}_{[\mathcal{Q}]}\{\alpha,\beta\}),$$

 which is simple,

 (b) *if $\mathrm{dist}_{[\mathcal{Q}]}(\underline{p})=2$ and there exists a unique exponent $\underline{m}$ satisfying*

$$\mathrm{soc}_{[\mathcal{Q}]}(\underline{p})\prec^{\mathtt{b}}_{[\mathcal{Q}]}\underline{m}\prec^{\mathtt{b}}_{[\mathcal{Q}]}\underline{p},$$

 then we have $\mathrm{hd}(\mathcal{V}^{(1)}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\alpha)\otimes\mathcal{V}^{(1)}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta))\simeq\mathrm{hd}(\mathcal{V}^{(1)}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\underline{m}))$, which is a KR module.

Example 3.16. In (1.11), consider the pair $(\langle 1,-2\rangle,\langle 1,2\rangle)$. It is a $[\mathcal{Q}]$-minimal pair for the $[\mathcal{Q}]$-simple exponent $(\langle 1,-4\rangle,\langle 1,4\rangle)$. Then Theorem 3.15 tells that we have a surjective homomorphism

$$\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 1,2\rangle)\otimes\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 1,-2\rangle)\twoheadrightarrow\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 1,4\rangle)\otimes\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 1,-4\rangle),\ \text{which is simple.}$$

Remark 3.17. By Proposition 2.7, $\mathfrak{d}(\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\alpha),\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta))>0$ for a non $[\mathcal{Q}]$-simple pair $\underline{p}=(\alpha,\beta)$ in Theorem 3.15. Also, there are non $[\mathcal{Q}]$-simple pair $\underline{p}=(\alpha,\beta)$ such that $\mathfrak{d}(\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\alpha),\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta))>1$ and $\underline{p}'=(\alpha',\beta')$ whose composition length of $\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\alpha')\otimes\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\beta')$ is strictly larger than 2. For instance, consider the pair $(\langle 1,-3\rangle,\langle 2,3\rangle)$ in (1.11). Then we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 1,-3\rangle),\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 2,3\rangle)=2,\qquad \mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 1,-3\rangle)\,\nabla\,\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 2,3\rangle)\simeq\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 1,2\rangle)$$

and the composition length of $\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 1,-3\rangle)\otimes\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 2,3\rangle)$ is strictly larger than 2

Remark 3.18. For $\mathfrak{g}=B_n^{(1)},C_n^{(1)},F_4^{(1)}$ (resp. $G_2^{(1)}$), there exists $k\in I_0$ (resp. $1\in I_0$), such that $\imath\neq\jmath\in\blacktriangle_0$ (resp. $1,3,4\in\blacktriangle_0$) and $\{\bar{\imath},\bar{\jmath}\}=k$ (resp. $\{\bar{1},\bar{3},\bar{4}\}=1$). In particular, when $\mathfrak{g}=B_n^{(1)}$, $\jmath=2n-\imath$. Thus to emphasize the color of $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_x$ within a fixed skeleton category, we sometimes write $\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{\imath^m}\big)_x$ or $\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{\jmath^m}\big)_x$ instead of $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_x$, according to their colors. Throughout this paper, we specially deal with the $B_n^{(1)}$-cases, since $k=\{\overline{k},\overline{2n-k}\}\in I_0\setminus\{n\}$.

As special cases of Theorem 3.15 (1) and (2), we have the following special families of homomorphisms for classical untwisted affine types:

Corollary 3.19. *For classical untwisted affine types $\mathfrak{g}=A_{n-1}^{(1)}$, $B_n^{(1)}$, $C_n^{(1)}$, $D_n^{(1)}$, and $l<n'{:=}n-\delta(\mathfrak{g}=D_n^{(1)})$, assume $1\le a,b<n'$ with $a+b<l$. Then we have*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-b}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{-b}}\,\nabla\,\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-a}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-a})^{a}}\simeq\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l}\big)\otimes\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-a-b}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-a-b})^{a-b}}.\tag{3.11a}$$

(a) *Consider $\mathfrak{g}=B_n^{(1)}$ and assume $l>n$. Suppose there exists $a,b\in[1,2n{-}1]$ such that $l-b<n<l-a$ and $a+b\le l$. Then we have*

$$\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l-b}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}}\,\nabla\,\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l-a}\big)_{-(-q)^{a}}\simeq\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l}\big)_{(-1)}\otimes\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l-a-b}\big)_{(-q)^{a-b+1}}.\tag{3.11b}$$

Here we understand $\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l-a-b}\big)_{(-q)^{a-b+1}}$ is a trivial module $\mathbf{1}$ if $l=a+b$.

(b) *If $l=n'$, we have*

$$\begin{aligned}&\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n'-b}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{n'-b})^{-b}}\,\nabla\,\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n'-a}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{n'-a})^{a}}\\ &\simeq\begin{cases}\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^2}\big)_{(-1)}\otimes\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-a-b}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{n-a-b})^{a-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}=B_n^{(1)},\\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)\otimes\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-a-b}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{a-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}=C_n^{(1)},\\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)\otimes\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-1}\big)\otimes\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-1-a-b}\big)_{(-q)^{a-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}=D_n^{(1)}.\end{cases}\end{aligned}\tag{3.11c}$$

We call homomorphisms in (3.11) *Dorey's rule of mesh type*. Next, let us give an example of Dorey's rule of mesh type.

Example 3.20. In (1.8), we have a length 2 chain of exponents:

$$\{[\![1,5]\!],[\![2,3]\!]\}\prec^{\mathtt{b}}_{[\mathcal{Q}]}\{[\![1,3]\!],[\![2,5]\!]\}.$$

Then we have

$$\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}([\![1,3]\!])\,\nabla\,\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}([\![2,5]\!])\simeq\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}([\![2,3]\!])\otimes\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}([\![1,5]\!]),$$

which is simple.

As special cases of Theorem 3.15 (2), we have the following special families of homomorphisms in (3.12):

Corollary 3.21.

(a) *For $1 \le k \le n-1$ and $a \in \mathbf{k}^\times$, there exists a $U_q(B_n^{(1)})$-module surjective homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{(-1)^{n+1-k}aq^{-n+k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-k}\big)_{a(-1)^{k+1}q^k} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^2}\big)_a. \tag{3.12a}$$

(b) *For $1 \le k \le n-1$ and $a \in \mathbf{k}^\times$, there exists a $U_q(C_n^{(1)})$-module surjective homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1-n+k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{n+1-k}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^2}\big)_a. \tag{3.12b}$$

(c) *For $1 \le k \le n-2$ and $n', n'' \in \{n, n-1\}$ such that $n' - n'' \equiv_2 n-k$, there exist a surjective homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n'}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+l+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n''}\big)_{(-q)^{n-l-1}} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k}\big). \tag{3.12c}$$

(d) *There exists a $G_2^{(1)}$-module surjective homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{t}})^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{t}})^{5}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^2}\big). \tag{3.12d}$$

(e) *For $a \in \mathbf{k}^\times$, there exist $U_q(F_4^{(1)})$-module surjective homomorphisms*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-5}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{5}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{4^2}\big)_{-a} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2}\big)_{-aq^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{aq_{\mathsf{s}}^4} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{3^2}\big)_{-a}. \tag{3.12e}$$

Let us see morphisms described in (3.12) with examples: In (1.9), one can see that there exists a unique chain of exponents satisfying the condition:

$$[\![1,5]\!] \prec^{\mathtt{b}}_{[\mathcal{Q}]} \{[\![1,3]\!],[\![4,5]\!]\} \prec^{\mathtt{b}}_{[\mathcal{Q}]} \{[\![1]\!],[\![2,5]\!]\}.$$

Then

$$\mathrm{hd}(\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}([\![2,5]\!]) \otimes \mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}([\![1]\!])) \simeq \mathrm{hd}(\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}([\![1,3]\!]) \otimes \mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}([\![4,5]\!])),$$

which is a KR module. In (1.10), one can see also that there exists a unique chain of exponents satisfying

$$\langle 1,3\rangle \prec^{\mathtt{b}}_{[\mathcal{Q}]} \{\langle 1,4\rangle, \langle 3,-4\rangle\} \prec^{\mathtt{b}}_{[\mathcal{Q}]} \{\langle 1,-4\rangle, \langle 3,4\rangle\}.$$

Then

$$\mathrm{hd}(\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 3,4\rangle) \otimes \mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 1,-4\rangle)) \simeq \mathrm{hd}(\mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 3,-4\rangle) \otimes \mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{Q}}(\langle 1,4\rangle)),$$

which is a KR module.

4. Kashiwara Crystals

We recall some basic facts about Kashiwara crystals [Kas90, Kas91]. Here, we give an abbreviated definition focusing on the category of crystals coming from finite dimensional (highest weight) $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules in order to focus on the facts that we need, but we refer the reader to [BS17, KC02] for more details.

Definition 4.1. A *$U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-crystal* (which we simply call a crystal when the quantum group is clear) is a set $\mathcal{B}$ with *Kashiwara operators* $\widetilde{e}_i, \widetilde{f}_i \colon \mathcal{B} \to \mathcal{B} \sqcup \{\mathbf{0}\}$ such that $\widetilde{f}_i b = b'$ if and only if $b = \widetilde{e}_i b'$ for all $b, b' \in \mathcal{B}$. We equate this with the I_0-edge labeled digraph with edges $b \xrightarrow{i} \widetilde{f}_i b$. We also define statistics for each $i \in I_0$

$$\varepsilon_i(b) = \max\{k \mid \widetilde{e}_i^k b \neq \mathbf{0}\}, \qquad \varphi_i(b) = \max\{k \mid \widetilde{f}_i^k b \neq \mathbf{0}\},$$

and weight function $\mathrm{wt} \colon \mathcal{B} \to P_0$ by $\mathrm{wt}(b) = \sum_{i \in I_0} (\varphi_i(b) - \varepsilon_i(b))\Lambda_i$.

The direct sum of two crystals is simply their disjoint union with the obvious crystal structure. Morphisms are the maps that commute with the crystal structure (normally these are called strict morphisms and have more restrictions than in the usual category of crystals, but it will be sufficient for our purposes).

Definition 4.2 (Tensor product of crystals)**.** For crystals $\mathcal{B}_1, \dots, \mathcal{B}_k$, we define the tensor product crystal $\mathcal{B}_k \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathcal{B}_1$ as the Cartesian product $\mathcal{B}_k \times \cdots \times \mathcal{B}_1$ with the Kashiwara operators defined by the following *bracketing rule*. Fix an element $b = b_k \otimes \cdots \otimes b_1$ and some $i \in I_0$. Consider the following word of the form

$$\underbrace{)\cdots)}_{\varphi_i(b_k)}\underbrace{(\cdots(}_{\varepsilon_i(b_k)} \;\cdots\; \underbrace{)\cdots)}_{\varphi_i(b_1)}\underbrace{(\cdots(}_{\varepsilon_i(b_1)} \qquad \longrightarrow \qquad \underbrace{)\cdots)}_{\varphi_i(b)}\underbrace{(\cdots(}_{\varepsilon_i(b)},$$

where we have done the reduction by removing all pairs '()' from the word. Let m_e and n_f correspond to the leftmost '(' (resp. rightmost ')') in the reduced word, then the Kashiwara operators are defined by

$$\widetilde{e}_i b := b_k \otimes \cdots \otimes (\widetilde{e}_i b_{m_e}) \otimes \cdots \otimes b_1, \qquad\qquad \widetilde{f}_i b := b_k \otimes \cdots \otimes (\widetilde{f}_i b_{m_f}) \otimes \cdots \otimes b_1.$$

In particular, $\mathrm{wt}(b) = \sum_{m=1}^{k} \mathrm{wt}(b_m)$.

Remark 4.3. We follow the tensor product convention in [BS17], which is the opposite convention of Kashiwara [KC02].

Let $\mathcal{B}(\lambda)$ denote the crystal associated to the highest weight $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module $V(\lambda)$, and u_λ the unique *highest weight element*, that is $\widetilde{e}_i b = \mathbf{0}$ for all $i \in I_0$. Kashiwara showed [Kas90, Kas91, Kas93] that the highest weight elements in a crystal correspond to the decomposition of $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules into simple modules (counted with multiplicity). Furthermore, explicit tableau descriptions of $\mathcal{B}(\lambda)$ was given for Lie algebras of type ABCDG in [KN94, KM94] with all non-spin cases as follows. Indeed, the set of *Kashiwara–Nakashima (KN) tableaux* is generated by u_λ being the tableau of shape λ (under the usual identification by $P_0 \subseteq \bigoplus_{i=1}^n \mathbb{Z}\epsilon_i$ with the coefficient of ϵ_i being the number of boxes in the i-th row) with the i-th row filled by i and embedded in $\mathcal{B}(\Lambda_1)^{\otimes|\lambda|}$, where $\mathcal{B}(\Lambda_1)$ is given in Figure 3, by reading from bottom-to-top along columns and columns are read left-to-right. A precise characterization of these tableaux are given that we omit for brevity, but we note that all KN tableaux have the following version of semistandardness.

Definition 4.4 (Semistandard tableau)**.** Let T be a tableaux of type $\mathfrak{g}_0$. Then T is *semistandard* if rows (resp. columns) are weakly (resp. strictly) increasing in the alphabet $\mathcal{B}(\Lambda_1)$ considered as a poset whose Hasse diagram is given by Figure 3 with the following exceptions:

- In types B_n and G_2, an entry 0 cannot be repeated along rows but it can be repeated down columns.
- In type D_n, columns do not need to be comparable (as opposed to rows).
- In type G_2, it has more complicated rules; see [KM94].

By the tensor product rule, we have the following well-known result. (This is also known as the Yamanouchi condition from tableaux in type A_n.)

Proposition 4.5. *If $b_m \otimes b_{m-1} \otimes \cdots \otimes b_1$ is a highest weight element, then $b_{m-1} \otimes \cdots \otimes b_1$ is also a highest weight element.*

Theorem 4.6 ([Kas91, Kas93])**.** *The tensor product makes the category of highest weight crystals into a symmetric monoidal category.*

An important consequence of Theorem 4.6 is that $\mathcal{B}_1 \otimes \mathcal{B}_2 \simeq \mathcal{B}_2 \otimes \mathcal{B}_1$ and that a tensor product decomposes into a direct sum of highest weight crystals.

5. Higher Dorey's rules and generalized T-systems

In this section, we shall (i) show the homomorphisms among KR modules, called the higher Dorey's rule, and (ii) generalize T-system by using the results have been introduced in the previous sections. In this section, our higher Dorey's rule will be given with some *restrictions* due to the lack of $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants among KR modules. We will subsequently remove such restrictions by computing the $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants in the later sections.

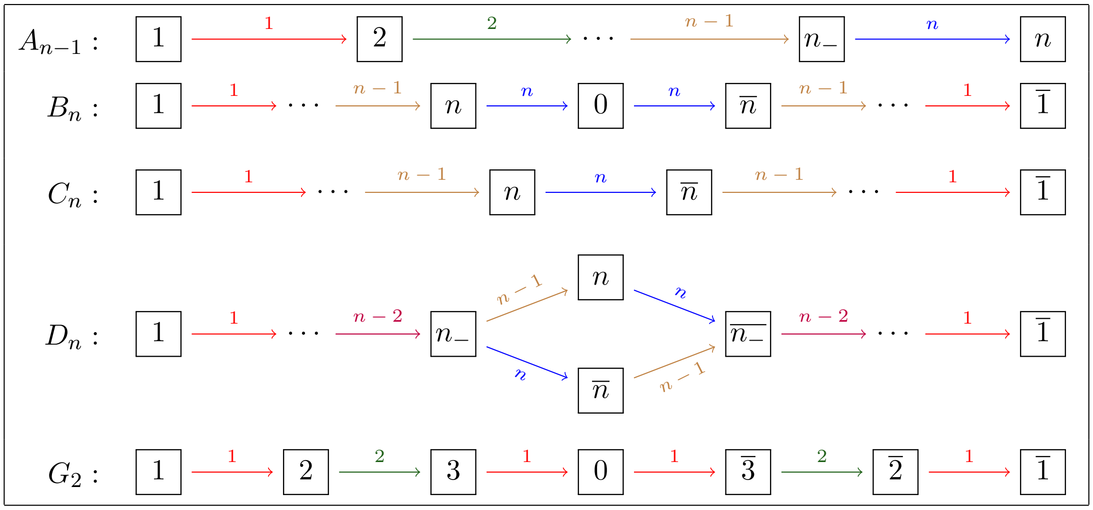


FIGURE 3. The crystal corresponding to the natural representation $V(\Lambda_1)$ for each of the Lie algebras of type ABCDG; here $n_- := n-1$.

5.1. **Preparation.** In this subsection, we compute $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants and composition length of modules in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ and investigate homomorphism between modules over $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$, which will be used crucially in our main theorem. Note that $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants between fundamental modules are calculated in [AK97, DO94, KKK15, Oh15, OS19b]. We used the results several times in this subsection.

Proposition 5.1. *Let $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ be a quantum affine algebra of untwisted type $A^{(1)}_{n-1}, B^{(1)}_n, C^{(1)}_n$ or $D^{(1)}_n$. For $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$ and $1 \le k, l < n$, let us assume $k + l < n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D^{(1)}_n)$. Then the highest weight $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module $V(m\Lambda_{k+l})$ appears exactly once in the $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$ restriction of the following modules:*

(a) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_l)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)^{l}}$,
(b) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)^{l+m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)^{l-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_l)^{-k}}$,
(c) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)^{l-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{m-1}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_l)^{-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k+l}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{k+1})^{m-1}}$,
(d) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(k+l)^m}\big)$.

Furthermore, we have the following:

(i) *If $\mathfrak{g} = B^{(1)}_n$ and $k + l = n$, then $V(2m\Lambda_n)$ appears exactly once in the $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$ restriction of the modules* (a)∼(c) *and* $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)}$.
(ii) *If $\mathfrak{g} = C^{(1)}_n$ and $k + l = n$, then $V(m\Lambda_n)$ appears exactly once in the $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$ restriction of the modules* (a)∼(d).
(iii) *If $\mathfrak{g} = D^{(1)}_n$ and $k+l = n-1$, then $V(m(\Lambda_{n-1}+\Lambda_n))$ appears exactly once in the $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$ restriction of the modules* (a)∼(c) *and* $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m}}\big)$.

Proof. We will prove all cases (including (i)–(iii)) by using the corresponding $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$ crystals. For (d), this corresponds to the dominant extremal weight, and hence appears exactly once. From Proposition 4.5, we know that the rightmost factor in the tensor product must be a highest weight element. Then by weight considerations, we see there is precisely only one such highest weight element in each tensor product:

(5.1)

$$\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|}\hline k_+ & \cdots & k_+ & k_+ \\ \hline \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \hline h & \cdots & h & h \\ \hline \end{array} \otimes \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|}\hline 1 & \cdots & 1 & 1 \\ \hline \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \hline k & \cdots & k & k \\ \hline \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{|c|}\hline l_+ \\ \hline \vdots \\ \hline h \\ \hline \end{array} \otimes \begin{array}{|c|c|c|}\hline l_+ & \cdots & l_+ \\ \hline \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \hline h & \cdots & h \\ \hline \end{array} \otimes \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|}\hline 1 & \cdots & 1 & 1 \\ \hline \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \hline l & \cdots & l & l \\ \hline \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{|c|c|c|}\hline k_+ & \cdots & k_+ \\ \hline \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \hline h & \cdots & h \\ \hline \end{array} \otimes \begin{array}{|c|c|c|}\hline 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ \hline \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \hline k & \cdots & k \\ \hline \end{array} \otimes \begin{array}{|c|}\hline 1 \\ \hline \vdots \\ \hline h \\ \hline \end{array},$$

where $k_+ := k+1$, $l_+ := l+1$, and $h := k+l$. □

Alternatively, we could prove Proposition 5.1 inductively on m using the (virtual) Kleber's algorithm [Kle98, OSS03] (see, e.g., [Scr20]).

For the following cases in type $B_n^{(1)}$, the multiplicity of the highest weight $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module $V(m\Lambda_{\overline{k+l}})$ is not multiplicity free. Therefore, we are required to use a different method to show the higher Dorey's rule. We use the theory of *q-characters* [FR99], which is the injective ring morphism

$$\chi_q \colon K(\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}) \to \mathbb{Z}[Y_{i,a}^{\pm 1}]_{i \in I_0, a \in \mathbf{k}^\times}, \tag{5.2}$$

where $K(\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}})$ is the Grothendieck ring of $\mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$, such that every simple $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module $V \in \mathscr{C}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ is characterized by its maximal *dominant monomial*, a monomial $m = \prod_{i,a} Y_{i,a}^{u_{i,a}}$ such that $u_{i,a} \geq 0$. In particular, KR modules are *special* [FM01, Her06, Her10a, Nak04, Nak10], which means that there is precisely one dominant monomial (and corresponds to its Drinfel'd polynomial [CP91, CP95c]). (Note this is different than what it means for the corresponding node i to be special.)

Proposition 5.2. *For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $B_n^{(1)}$ and $1 \leq l < n < k < 2n-1$ with $k + l \leq 2n-1$, the unique dominant monomial of $\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(k+l)^m}\big)_{(-1)}$ appears exactly once in the q-characters of the following modules:*

(a) $\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{-(-q)^{l}}$,

(b) $\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{-(-q)^{l-1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{-(-q)^{m+l-1}}$,

(c) $\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{-(-q)^{l-1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k+l}\big)_{-(-q)^{m-1}}$.

Proof. We will use the tableau formula for q-characters that is given in [KOS95] (see also [NN06]). More precisely, they are described as sums over semistandard tableaux (Definition 4.4) with K rows and M columns. The box in row r and column j is weighted as

$$\boxed{i}_{a'} = \begin{cases} Y_{i-1,a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2i}}^{-1} Y_{i,a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2(i-1)}} & \text{if } i \in J, \\ Y_{n-1,a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n}}^{-1} Y_{n,a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-3}} Y_{n,a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-1}} & \text{if } i = n, \\ Y_{n,a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+1}}^{-1} Y_{n,a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-3}} & \text{if } i = 0, \\ Y_{n-1,a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2}} Y_{n,a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-1}}^{-1} Y_{n,a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+1}}^{-1} & \text{if } i = \overline{n}, \\ Y_{\overline{\imath}-1,a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2(2n-\overline{\imath}-1)}} Y_{\overline{\imath},a'q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2(2n-\overline{\imath})}}^{-1} & \text{if } i \in \overline{J}, \end{cases}$$

for $a' = aq_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-1-2M+4j+K-2r}$, where $J = \{1, \dots, n-1\}$ and $\overline{J} = \{\overline{n-1}, \dots, \overline{1}\}$, and by convention $Y_{0,a} = 1$ and $\overline{\overline{\imath}} = i$ for all $a \in \mathbb{C}$. Below, we will use $h := 2n - k$.

We first show existence. Consider (a), and we first consider the special case of $m = 1$. The dominant monomial of $\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{-(-q)^{l}} \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{h}\big)_{-(-q)^{l}}$ is $Y_{h,(-1)^{l+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2l}}$, and $\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l}\big)_{(-q)^{1-k}}$ has the monomial $Y_{h,(-1)^{-k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2l}}^{-1} Y_{h-l,1}$ given by the column $[\overline{h}, \dots, \overline{g}]$, where $g = h-l+1 = 2n-k-l+1$. Thus the requisite dominant monomial appears in the product of the q-characters, and the general m case follows from the j-th columns of each tableau is given by the respective $m = 1$ case column/tableau and they are shifted by the same amount. Parts (b) and (c) are similar.

Now we need to show uniqueness. We first show (a) for the case $m = 1$. Suppose the right factor's column is $[1, \dots, j, i_1, \dots, i_{l'}]$ with $i_1 > j + 1$ and $l' > 0$. Now let us consider the monomial $Y_{j,q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{\alpha}}$, where $\alpha = 2l + h - 2j + 1$, in this column. As there is no $j+1$ in the column, if we try to cancel this with a $\overline{\jmath}$, then we would require that box to be at height $2n - 2j$, which is impossible since $h < n$. Next if $\alpha = 0$, then we would again need $j > h$, which is impossible. Hence, we must cancel this $Y_{j,q_{\mathsf{s}}^{\alpha}}$ from the left factor to obtain our dominant monomial. If we have a $j+1$ (resp. $\overline{\jmath}$) in this column, it must occur at height $r = 2 + (h-l)/2 + 2j - 2n$ (resp. $r = 1 + (h-l)/2$). If $h < l$, this is impossible, and if $h \geq l$, then the corresponding $Y_{j-1,q_{\mathsf{s}}^{\alpha'}}$ from this factor cannot be canceled by an analogous computation as there is no $Y^{-1}_{j-1,q_{\mathsf{s}}^{\beta}}$ for $\beta < \alpha$. Hence, we have shown (a) for $m = 1$.

The general case for (a) is follows by noting this argument shows the rightmost column of the right factor is $[1, \dots, h]$ and forces all other columns to be the same by semistandardness, and weight considerations forces us to have the left factor be the one given in the existence proof. An analogous argument is used for (b) and (c). $\square$

Proposition 5.3.

(a) *For $\mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}$, the highest weight $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module $V(2m\Lambda_{n-2})$ appears exactly once in the $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$ decomposition of the following modules:*
  - (i) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{3}}$,
  - (ii) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{q_{\mathsf{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-1)^m q_{\mathsf{s}}^{2m+1}}$,
  - (iii) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{q_{\mathsf{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{q_{\mathsf{s}}^{-5}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^2}\big)_{(-1)^{m+1} q_{\mathsf{s}}^{2m-2}}$,
  - (iv) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^{m+1}}$.

(b) *For $\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)}$, the highest weight $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{m\Lambda_{n-3}}\big)$ appears exactly once in the following modules:*
  - (i) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{2}}$,
  - (ii) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)}\big)_{(-q)^{m+1}}$,
  - (iii) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-3}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}}$,
  - (iv) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-3)^m}\big)$.

Proof. The proof is analogous to the proof of Proposition 5.1. For (iv), this corresponds to the dominant extremal weight, and hence appears exactly once. Hence, it remains to show the claim for (i)∼(iii). The tableaux/highest weight elements for (a) are

$$\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|}\hline 1 & \cdots & 1 & 1 \\ \hline \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \hline \overline{n_-} & \cdots & \overline{n_-} & \overline{n_-} \\ \hline \overline{n} & \cdots & \overline{n} & \overline{n} \\ \hline \end{array} \otimes u_{m\Lambda_n}, \qquad \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|}\hline 1 & \cdots & 1 & 1 \\ \hline \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \hline \overline{n_-} & \cdots & \overline{n_-} & \overline{n_-} \\ \hline \overline{n} & \cdots & \overline{n} & \overline{n} \\ \hline \end{array} \otimes u_{(m-1)\Lambda_n} \otimes u_{\Lambda_n}, \qquad \begin{array}{|c|c|c|}\hline 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ \hline \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \hline \overline{n_-} & \cdots & \overline{n_-} \\ \hline \overline{n} & \cdots & \overline{n} \\ \hline \end{array} \otimes u_{(m-1)\Lambda_n} \otimes u_{2\Lambda_{n-2}},$$

where $n_- = n - 1$. For (b) the highest weight elements are

$$\widetilde{f}_{n-1}^{m} \widetilde{f}_{n-2}^{m} \widetilde{f}_{n}^{m} u_{m\Lambda_n} \otimes u_{m\Lambda_{n-1}},$$
$$\widetilde{f}_{n}^{m-1} \widetilde{f}_{n-2}^{m-1} \widetilde{f}_{n-1}^{m-1} u_{(m-1)\Lambda_{n-1}} \otimes \widetilde{f}_{n-1} \widetilde{f}_{n-2} \widetilde{f}_{n} u_{m\Lambda_n} \otimes u_{\Lambda_{n-1}},$$
$$\widetilde{f}_{n}^{m-1} \widetilde{f}_{n-2}^{m-1} \widetilde{f}_{n-1}^{m-1} u_{(m-1)\Lambda_{n-1}} \otimes u_{m\Lambda_n} \otimes u_{\Lambda_{n-3}}.$$

$\square$

Lemma 5.4. *Let $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 2}$.*

(i) *For $1 \leq k < n$ with $k + 1 < n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)})$, there is no* injective *homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_1)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)} \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_1)^{-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k+1}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{k+1})^{m-1}}$$

and no isomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_1)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^m}\big).$$

(ii) *For* $\mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}$, *there is no* injective *homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)} \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^2}\big)_{(-1)^m q_{\mathsf{s}}^{2m-2}}$$

and no isomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^m}.$$

(iii) *For* $\mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}$, *there is no* injective *homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})} \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-n}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{m-1}}$$

and no isomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2 \rceil}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2 \rfloor}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{\epsilon}}.$$

where $\epsilon = \delta(m \equiv_2 0)$.

(iv) *For* $\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)}$, *there is no* injective *homomorphism*

$$\begin{aligned}\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+2}} &\otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^m}\big)_{(-q)} \\ &\rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-1}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}}\end{aligned}$$

and no isomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^m}\big)_{(-q)} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big).$$

(v) *For* $\mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}$, *there is no* injective *homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{3}} \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{q_{\mathsf{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{q_{\mathsf{s}}^{-5}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^2}\big)_{(-1)^{m+1} q_{\mathsf{s}}^{2m-2}}$$

and no isomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{3}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^{m+1}}.$$

(vi) *For* $\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)}$, *there is no* injective *homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{2}} \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-3}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}},$$

and no isomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{2}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-3)^m}\big).$$

(vii) *For* $\mathfrak{g}$ *of type* $B_n^{(1)}$ *and* $n < k < 2n-1$, *there is no* injective *homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{-(-q)} \rightarrowtail \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k+1}\big)_{-(-q)^{m-1}}$$

and no isomorphism

$$\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{-(-q)} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^m}\big)_{(-1)}$$

Proof. We prove the claims by looking at the branching into $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules. We show that the $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module $V(\lambda)$, where λ is the dominant extremal weight (considered in P_0) does not appear as a factor in the codomain. In all cases, this will follow from the fact that the dominant extremal weight μ in the codomain is dominated by λ (and clearly $\mu \neq \lambda$). These computations can be reduced down to the case $m = 1$ as either it is a multiple of this case or all other terms cancel. Therefore, it is a straightforward (and well-known) computation using the root system data. □

Lemma 5.5 (cf. Proposition 1.9)**.** *Let M_1, M_2 be KR modules with*

$$\mathrm{rch}(M_k) = [a_k, b_k] \quad \textit{and} \quad \mathrm{clr}(M_k) = \imath_k \quad (k = 1, 2).$$

(i) *If there exists a Q-datum $\mathcal{Q} = (\blacktriangle, \sigma, \xi)$ of $\mathfrak{g}$ such that $(\imath_1, a_1) \in \Gamma_0^{\mathcal{Q}}$ and $(\imath_2, b_2) \in (\Gamma^{\mathcal{Q}}[-s])_0$ for some $s \geq 1$,*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}M_1, M_2) = 0. \tag{5.3}$$

(ii) *In particular,* (5.3) *holds when $b_2 < a_1$.*

Proof. (i) For any Q-datum $\mathcal{Q}$ and fundamental module F_k $(k = 1, 2)$, it is known that if $F_k \in \mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}[m_k]$ with $|m_1 - m_2| > 1$, $\mathfrak{d}(F_1, F_2) = 0$ (see [Oh15, Appendix] and [OS19b, OS19a] for precise information).

By taking $\mathcal{Q}$ in the statement, we have $M_1 \in \mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q},\geq 0}$, $M_2 \in \mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q},<0}$, and hence $\mathscr{D}M_1 \in \mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q},\geq 1}$. Since

- $M_1 = \mathrm{hd}(\mathcal{V}(\imath_1, b_1) \otimes \mathcal{V}(\imath_1, b_1 - d_{\imath_1}) \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathcal{V}(\imath_1, a_1))$,
- $M_2 = \mathrm{hd}(\mathcal{V}(\imath_2, b_2) \otimes \mathcal{V}(\imath_2, b_2 - d_{\imath_2}) \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathcal{V}(\imath_2, a_2))$,

for $\mathrm{clr}(M_k) = \imath_k$, the first assertion follows from Proposition 2.9.

(ii) Note that there exists a Q-datum $\mathcal{Q}$ whose height function ξ has values in (1) $[a_1, a_1 + 1]$ for $\mathfrak{g} = A^{(t)}_{n-1}$, $D^{(t)}_n$, $E^{(t)}_n$, (2) $[a_1, a_1 + 2]$ for $\mathfrak{g} = B^{(1)}_n$, $C^{(1)}_n$, $F^{(1)}_n$, and (3) $[a_1, a_1 + 3]$ for $\mathfrak{g} = F^{(1)}_4$ (see [FHOO22, §4.5] for more detail). Thus the second assertion holds. □

Corollary 5.6. *Let $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ be of non-exceptional untwisted affine classical type and $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$. For $1 \leq k < n$, we have the following:*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(k+1)})_{(-\check{q}_{k+1})^m}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})) = 0 \textit{ if } k + 1 < n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D^{(1)}_n).$$

Additionally, we have

(i) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^m}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})) = 0$ *for* $\mathfrak{g} = C^{(1)}_n$,

(ii) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2})_{(-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathsf{s}}^{2m}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})) = 0$ *for* $\mathfrak{g} = B^{(1)}_n$,

(iii) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^m}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^m})) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{(-q)^m}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^m})) = 0$ *for* $\mathfrak{g} = D^{(1)}_n$.

Proof. Since the proofs are similar, we assume $\mathfrak{g} = A^{(1)}_{n-1}$. Then we have $\mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k+1})_{(-q)^m} = [m]$ and $\mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) = [1-m, m-1]$. Then the assertion follows from Lemma 5.5. The particular cases (i)∼(iii) also follows from the same argument. □

Proposition 5.7. *For classical untwisted affine types $\mathfrak{g} = A^{(1)}_n$, $B^{(1)}_n$, $C^{(1)}_n$, $D^{(1)}_n$, $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$ and $1 \leq b < l \leq n' := n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D^{(1)}_n)$, we have*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-b)^m})_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{-b}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^m})_{(-\check{q}_{l-1})}) \leq 1. \tag{5.4}$$

In particular, by taking $l = b + 1$, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-\check{q}_1)^{-b}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{b^m})_{(-\check{q}_b)}) \leq 1 \quad \textit{if } b + 1 = l \leq n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D^{(1)}_n). \tag{5.5}$$

Proof. Since the proofs are similar, we give a proof for $A_n^{(1)}$. Note that

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b}} \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-b}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m-b}}.$$

Since

$$\mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}}) = [3-m-b, m-b-1] \text{ and}$$
$$\mathrm{exrch}_{l-b}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)}) = [1-m-b, m+b+1],$$

we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-b}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m-b}}) \le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-b}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m-b}})).$$

Thus now let us focus on $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-b}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m-b}})$. Note that

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)}\big)_{(-q)^{-m}} \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^{m+1}}\big)$$

and $\mathrm{exrch}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^{m+1}}\big)) = [-1-m-k, m+k+1]$. Thus $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^{m+1}}\big), \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-b}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m-b}}) = 0$. On the other hand, Lemma 2.4 and Proposition 2.9 imply

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &\le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-b}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m-b}}) \\
&\le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^{m+1}}\big), \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-b}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m-b}}) + \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)}\big)_{(-q)^{-m}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m-b}}), \\
&= \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)}\big)_{(-q)^{-m}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m-b}}).
\end{aligned}$$

It is known that $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)}\big)_{(-q)^{-m}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m-b}}) = 1$ (see Appendix E.1 below). Hence the assertion follows. $\square$

Proposition 5.8. *Let $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $B_n^{(1)}$ and take $n < l \le 2n-1$ and b with $1+b \le l$ and $l-b < n < l-1$. Then we have*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{-(-q)}) \le 1 \quad \text{for any } m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}. \tag{5.6}$$

In particular, when $l = b+1$

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{b^m}\big)_{-(-q)}) \le 1. \tag{5.7}$$

Proof. Note that

$$\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{-(-q)} \simeq \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)}\big)_{-(-q)^m} \nabla \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)}.$$

Since

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{exrch}_{(l-1)}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}}) = [-2m-4b+8, 2m] \quad \text{and} \\
&\mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{-(-q)}) = [4-2m, 2m-4],
\end{aligned} \tag{5.8}$$

we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}}, \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)}\big)_{-(-q)^m} \nabla \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)}) \le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}}, \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)}\big)_{-(-q)^m}).$$

Thus let us focus on $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}}, \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)}\big)_{-(-q)^m})$. Note that

$$\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)}\big)_{(-q)^{m-b+2}} \nabla \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}} \simeq \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^{m+1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+2}}$$

and $\mathrm{exrch}_k(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^{m+1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+2}}) = [4-2m-4b, 2m+4]$. Therefore,

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^{m+1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+2}} \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)}\big)_{-(-q)^m}) = 0.$$

On the other hand, Lemma 2.4 and Proposition 2.9, say that

$$\begin{aligned}0 &\le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-b)^m})_{(-q)^{-b+1}}, \mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-1)})_{-(-q)^m}) \\ &\le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-b)^{m+1}})_{(-q)^{-b+2}}\mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-1)})_{-(-q)^m}) + \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-b)})_{(-q)^{m-b+2}}, \mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-1)})_{-(-q)^m}), \\ &= \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-b)})_{(-q)^{m-b+2}}, \mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-1)})_{-(-q)^m})\end{aligned}$$

It is known that $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-b)})_{(-q)^{m-b+2}}, \mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-1)})_{-(-q)^m}) = 1$ (see Appendix E.1 below). Hence the assertion follows. ☐

Proposition 5.9. *Let $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$.*

(a) *For $\mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}$, the module $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^3}$ is of composition length at most 2.*

(b) *For $\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)}$, the module $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^2}$ is of composition length at most 2.*

Proof. Since the proofs are similar, we only give a proof of (a). Note that $\mathrm{clr}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-3}}) \neq \mathrm{clr}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^3})$ for a fixed skeleton category containing them. Without loss of generality, we set

$$n = \mathrm{clr}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-3}}) \quad \text{and} \quad n+1 = \mathrm{clr}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^3}).$$

Note also that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^3} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m+1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})}.$$

Since

$$\mathrm{exrch}_{n+1}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-3}}) = [-2m-7, 2m+1] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})}) = [5-2m, 2m-3],$$

we have $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})}) = 0$. By Proposition 2.9, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^3}) &\le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})}) + \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m+1}}) \\ &= \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m+1}}).\end{aligned}$$

Note that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-3}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m-1}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m+1}})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-1}}$$

and $\mathrm{exrch}_{n+1}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m+1}})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-1}}) = [-7-2m, 2m+5]$. Hence

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m+1}})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m+1}}) = 0.$$

On the other hand, Lemma 2.4 and Proposition 2.9, say that

$$\begin{aligned}0 &\le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m+1}}) \\ &\le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m+1}})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m+1}}) + \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m-1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m+1}}), \\ &= \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m-1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m+1}})\end{aligned}$$

It is known that $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m-1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{2m+1}}) = 1$ (see Appendix E.1 below). Hence the assertion follows by Proposition 2.8. ☐

Remark 5.10. In the above three propositions, we have inequalities of the form $0 \le \mathfrak{d}(M,N) \le 1$. If we can prove that $M \otimes N$ have a simple head not isomorphic to itself, we con conclude that $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) = 1$. In the successive subsection, we will refine the inequalities in the above three propositions to $\mathfrak{d}(M,N) = 1$.

The following proposition is an alternative proof of Proposition 3.10(iii):

Proposition 5.11. *For every quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ and its T-system, we have*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[a^+,b],\mathfrak{R}[a,b^-]) = 1.$$

Proof. Since the proofs are similar, we give a proof for $\mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}$, $\imath := \mathrm{clr}(\mathfrak{R}[a^+,b]) = \mathrm{clr}(\mathfrak{R}[a,b^-]) \in \{n, n+1\}$. In this case, T-system is described as follows (see Appendix C also):

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m+1}}\big) \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^{1+m}} \to 0, \tag{5.9}$$

where $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{\pm 1}}$ corresponds to $\mathfrak{R}[a^+,b]$ (resp. $\mathfrak{R}[a,b^-]$). Note that $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}} \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big) \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{-m}}$. Since

$$\mathrm{exrch}_\imath(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)}) = [-2m, 2m+4] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)) = [4-2m, 2m-4],$$

we have

$$0 \le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}}) \le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{-m}}).$$

Since $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)} \simeq \mathscr{D}^{-1}\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{-m}} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m+1}}\big)$ and

$$\mathrm{exrch}_\imath(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m+1}}\big)) = [-2m-4, 2m+4] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{-m}}) = [-2m]$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}}) &\le \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{-m}}) \\ &\le \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{-m}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{-m}}) \overset{*}{=} 1, \end{aligned}$$

where $\overset{*}{=}$ holds by Proposition 3.10 (iv), as the particular case $a = b$.

On the other hand, T-system implies $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}}) > 0$, since $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)}$ is not simple. Hence the assertion follows as desired. ∎

5.2. **Higher Dorey's rule with restrictions and a generalized T-system.** In this section, we first consider $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ of classical untwisted affine type $A_{n-1}^{(1)}$, $B_n^{(1)}$, $C_n^{(1)}$ or $D_n^{(1)}$. We call the homomorphisms will be investigated in this subsection the *higher Dorey's rule* for untwisted affine type.

Theorem 5.12 (Higher Dorey's rule I)**.** *For $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ of non-exceptional untwisted affine classical type, let $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$ and set $\epsilon := \delta(m \equiv_2 0)$.*

(1) *For $1 \le k, l < n$, let us assume $k + l < n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)})$ and*

$$\min(k,l) = 1.$$

Then, we have

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_l)^{-k}} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)^{l}} \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(k+l)^m}\big). \tag{5.10a}$$

In particular, if $\mathfrak{g} \ne A_{n-1}^{(1)}$ and $k + l = n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)})$, we have

$$\begin{cases} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-1)^{m+l}q^{-l}} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-1)^{k+m}q^{k}} \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big) & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}, \\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-k}} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{l}} \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2 \rceil}}\big)_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2 \rfloor}}\big)_{(-q_\mathsf{s})^{\epsilon}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}, \\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-q)^{l}} \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big) & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)}. \end{cases} \tag{5.10b}$$

(2) *For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $B_n^{(1)}$ and $1 \le l < n < k < 2n-1$ with $k + l \le 2n - 1$ and*

$$\min(k,l) = 1,$$

we have

$$\mathtt{W}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \nabla \mathtt{W}(\boxed{k^m})_{-(-q)^l} \simeq \mathtt{W}(\boxed{(k+l)^m}) \iff \mathtt{V}(\boxed{\overline{l}^m})_{(-q)^{k-1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{\overline{k}^m})_{-(-q)^l} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{\overline{(k+l)}^m})_{(-1)}. \tag{5.10c}$$

(3) *For* $\mathfrak{g}$ *of type* $C_n^{(1)}$ *and* $1 \le l < n$*, we have*

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-1)^{m+1}(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1-n+l}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-1)^{m+1}(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{n+1-l}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{2m}}). \tag{5.10d}$$

(4) *For* $\mathfrak{g}$ *of type* $D_n^{(1)}$*,* $1 \le l < n-1$ *and* $n', n'' \in \{n-1, n\}$ *such that* $n' - n'' \equiv n - l \bmod 2$*, we have*

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n'^m})_{(-q)^{-n+l+1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n''^m})_{(-q)^{n-l-1}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m}). \tag{5.10e}$$

Remark 5.13. In Theorem 5.12, there are restrictions, $\min(k,l) = 1$ for (5.10a), (5.10b) and (5.10c), while the others, namely (5.10d) and (5.10e), do not have such restrictions. In Theorem 8.2 below, the restrictions for (5.10a), (5.10b) and (5.10c) will be removed.

Note that the case when $m = 1$, Theorem 5.12 recovers many cases of the classical Dorey's rule (Theorem 3.15). In the rest of this subsection, we will prove the Theorem 5.12 for $m \ge 2$. We prove each rule separately, although the approach used in all cases/types is essentially uniform. Moreover, the proof in different types will essentially only depend on the root data.

Proof of (5.10a). Since the proofs are similar, we shall consider the case when $\mathfrak{g} = A_{n-1}^{(1)}$. Without loss of generality, let us assume that $1 = l \le k$. We prove the assertion by using induction on m.

Note that $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^k}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})) = 0$, since

$$\mathrm{exrch}_k(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-k}}) = [-m-2k, m] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})) = [2-m, m-2].$$

First we can see that the composition

$$c_1 \colon \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^m} \to \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k+1})_{(-q)^{m-1}},$$

obtained from

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^m} &\simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^m} \\
&\rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{m-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^m} \\
&\twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k+1})_{(-q)^{m-1}},
\end{aligned}$$

is non-zero by Proposition 2.3. Note that the sequence of real simple modules

$$(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k+1})_{(-q)^{m-1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-k-1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})) \text{ is normal,}$$

by Lemma 2.17(a-iii) and Corollary 5.6. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{soc}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k+1})_{(-q)^{m-1}}) \\
&\quad\simeq \mathrm{hd}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k+1})_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})) \ (\because \text{Lemma 2.15 (2.4)}) \\
&\quad\simeq \mathrm{hd}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k+1})_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(k+1)^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}) \ (\because \text{an induction on } m) \\
&\quad\simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(k+1)^m}).
\end{aligned}$$

Thus the image of $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^m}$ under c_1 contains $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(k+1)^m})$. Then the composition

$$\begin{aligned}
c_2 \colon \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q)} &\rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^m} \\
&\xrightarrow{c_1} \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k+1})_{(-\check{q}_{k+1})^{m-1}}
\end{aligned} \tag{5.11}$$

does not vanish by Proposition 5.1. Hence we can conclude that

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^m}\big) \subseteq \mathrm{Im}(c_2).$$

On the other hand, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big), \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k-1}}) \leq 1$$

by (5.5) of Proposition 5.7. Moreover, by the induction hypothesis on $m \geq 2$, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big), \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-k-1}}) = 1.$$

From Lemma 5.4(i), c_2 in not injective and hence

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big), \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k-1}}) = 1.$$

and the composition length of $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-q)}$ is 2. Thus we have

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^m}\big) \simeq \mathrm{Im}(c_2) \text{ indeed}$$

and

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-q)} \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^m}\big),$$

which completes the assertion. $\square$

Corollary 5.14. *For $1 \leq k < n$ with $k+1 < n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)})$, we have*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_1)^{-k}}) = 1, \quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-\check{q}_1)^{1-m-k}}) = 1,$$

and hence there exists a short exact sequence

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_1)^{-k}} \Delta \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_1)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^m}\big) \to 0,$$

where the left and right terms are real simple modules by Proposition 2.10.

Proof of (5.10b). Since the proofs are similar, we only give a proof for $C_n^{(1)}$. As (5.10b), let us assume $l = 1$ without loss of generality.

Noe that we can see the composition

$$\begin{aligned} c_1\colon \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big) &\otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^m} \\ &\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{m-1}}, \end{aligned}$$

obtained from

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^m} \\ &\simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^m} \\ &\rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-n}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{m-n}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^m} \\ &\twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-n}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{m-1}}, \end{aligned}$$

is non-zero by Proposition 2.3. Note that the sequence of real simple modules

$$(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{m-1}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-n}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big)) \text{ is normal,}$$

by Lemma 2.17(a-iii) and Corollary 5.6. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{soc}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q_s)^{-n}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_s)^{m-1}}) \\
&\quad \simeq \mathrm{hd}\left(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_s)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q_s)^{-n}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}})\right) \quad (\because \text{Lemma 2.15 (2.4)}) \\
&\quad \simeq \mathrm{hd}\left(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_s)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lceil (m-1)/2 \rceil}})_{(-q_s)^{-\epsilon'-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lfloor (m-1)/2 \rfloor}})_{(-q_s)^{\epsilon'-1}}\right) \quad (\because \text{an induction on } m) \\
&\quad \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2 \rceil}})_{(-q_s)^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2 \rfloor}})_{(-q_s)^{\epsilon}},
\end{aligned}$$

where $\epsilon' = \delta(m-1 \equiv_2 0)$. Thus the image of $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_s)^m}$ under c_1 contains $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2 \rceil}})_{(-q_s)^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2 \rfloor}})_{(-q_s)^{\epsilon}}$, which is simple. Then the composition

$$\begin{aligned}
c_2 \colon \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q_s)^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q_s)} &\rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q_s)^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_s)^m} \\
&\xrightarrow{c_1} \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q_s)^{-n}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_s)^{m-1}}
\end{aligned} \tag{5.12}$$

does not vanish by Proposition 5.1. Hence we can conclude that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2 \rceil}})_{(-q_s)^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2 \rfloor}})_{(-q_s)^{\epsilon}} \subseteq \mathrm{Im}(c_2).$$

On the other hand, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-n}}) \le 1$$

by (5.5) of Proposition 5.7. Moreover, by the induction hypothesis on $m \ge 2$, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-n}}) = 1.$$

From Lemma 5.4(iii), c_2 in not injective and hence

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q_s)^{-n}}) = 1$$

and the composition length of $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q_s)^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q_s)}$ is 2. Thus we have

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2 \rceil}})_{(-q_s)^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2 \rfloor}})_{(-q_s)^{\epsilon}} \simeq \mathrm{Im}(c_2) \text{ indeed}$$

and

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q_s)^{-n+1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q_s)} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2 \rceil}})_{(-q_s)^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2 \rfloor}})_{(-q_s)^{\epsilon}},$$

which completes the assertion. □

Corollary 5.15. *For $\mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}, C_n^{(1)}$ and $D_n^{(1)}$, we have*

$$\begin{cases}
\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-1)^{m+(n-1)}q^{-n+1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-1)^{1+m}q}) = 1 & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}, \\
\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q_s)^{-n+1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q_s)}) = 1 & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}, \\
\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-n+2}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^m})_{(-q)}) = 1 & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)},
\end{cases}$$

and hence we have the corresponding short exact sequences:

$$0 \to \begin{cases} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-1)^{m+(n-1)}q^{-n+1}} \,\Delta\, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-1)^{1+m}q} \\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-n+1}} \,\Delta\, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})} \\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+2}} \,\Delta\, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^m}\big)_{(-q)}, \end{cases}$$

$$\to \begin{cases} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-1)^{m+(n-1)}q^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-1)^{1+m}q} \\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})} \\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^m}\big)_{(-q)}, \end{cases}$$

$$\to \begin{cases} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big) \\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2\rceil}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2\rfloor}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{\epsilon}} \\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big) \end{cases} \to 0,$$

where the left and right terms are real simple modules by Proposition 2.10.

Proof of (5.10c). We prove the assertion for $l = 1$ by using induction on m, as previous cases.

First we can see that the composition

$$c_1\colon \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{-(-q)^m} \to \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k+1}\big)_{-(-q)^{m-1}},$$

obtained from

$$\begin{aligned} \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{-(-q)^m} &\overset{*}{\simeq} \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{-(-q)^m} \\ \rightarrowtail \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} &\otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{m-k}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{-(-q)^m} \\ \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)} &\otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k+1}\big)_{-(-q)^{m-1}}, \end{aligned}$$

is non-zero by Proposition 2.3. Here $\overset{*}{\simeq}$ holds by (5.8). Note that the sequence of real simple modules

$$(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k+1}\big)_{-(-q)^{m-1}}, \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}}, \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)}) \text{ is normal,}$$

by Lemma 5.5. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathrm{soc}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k+1}\big)_{-(-q)^{m-1}}) \\ &\quad\simeq \mathrm{hd}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k+1}\big)_{-(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)}) \ (\because \text{Lemma 2.15 (2.4)}) \\ &\quad\simeq \mathrm{hd}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k+1}\big)_{-(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^{m-1}}\big)_{-(-q)^{-1}}) \ (\because \text{an induction on } m) \\ &\quad\simeq \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^m}\big)_{(-1)}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the image of $\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{-(-q)^m}$ under c_1 contains $\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^m}\big)_{(-1)}$. Then the composition

$$\begin{aligned} c_2\colon \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{-(-q)} &\rightarrowtail \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{-(-q)^m} \\ &\xrightarrow{c_1} \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k+1}\big)_{-(-q)^{m-1}} \end{aligned} \tag{5.13}$$

does not vanish by Proposition 5.2. Hence we can conclude that

$$\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^m}\big)_{(-1)} \subseteq \mathrm{Im}(c_2).$$

On the other hand, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}}, \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{-(-q)}) \leq 1$$

by (5.7) of Proposition 5.8. Moreover, by the induction hypothesis on $m \geq 2$, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-k+1}}, \mathtt{W}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})_{-(-q)}) = 1.$$

From Lemma 5.4(vii), c_2 in not injective and hence

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}(\boxed{1^{m}})_{(-q)^{-k+1}}, \mathtt{W}(\boxed{k^{m}})_{-(-q)}) = 1$$

and the composition length of $\mathtt{W}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}(\boxed{k^m})_{-(-q)}$ is 2. Thus we have

$$\mathtt{W}(\boxed{(k+1)^m})_{(-1)} \simeq \mathrm{Im}(c_2) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{W}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \nabla \mathtt{W}(\boxed{k^m})_{-(-q)} \simeq \mathtt{W}(\boxed{(k+1)^m})_{(-1)},$$

which completes the assertion. □

Corollary 5.16. *For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $B_n^{(1)}$ and $n < k < 2n-1$, we have*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}(\boxed{1^{m}})_{(-q)^{-k+1}}, \mathtt{W}(\boxed{k^{m}})_{-(-q)}) = 1 \quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{W}(\boxed{1^{m}})_{(-q)^{-k+1}}, \mathtt{W}(\boxed{k})_{-(-q)^{m}}) = 1,$$

and hence the short exact sequence

$$0 \to \mathtt{W}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \,\Delta\, \mathtt{W}(\boxed{k^m})_{-(-q)} \to \mathtt{W}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}(\boxed{k^m})_{-(-q)} \to \mathtt{W}(\boxed{(k+1)^m})_{-1} \to 0,$$

where the left and right terms are real simple modules by Proposition 2.10.

Now we have a generalization of (3.11) by using (5.10a) and (5.10b):

Theorem 5.17 (Higher Dorey's rule of mesh type I)**.** *For classical untwisted affine types $\mathfrak{g} = A_{n-1}^{(1)}$, $B_n^{(1)}$, $C_n^{(1)}$, $D_n^{(1)}$, $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$ and $l < n' := n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)})$, assume*

$$1 \leq a, b < n' \text{ with } a + b < l \text{ and } \min(a,b) = 1.$$

Then we have

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-b)^m})_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{-b}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-a)^m})_{(-\check{q}_{l-a})^{a}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-a-b)^m})_{(-\check{q}_{l-a-b})^{a-b}}. \tag{5.14a}$$

(a) *In particular, if $l = n'$, we have*

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n'-b)^m})_{(-\check{q}_{n'-b})^{-b}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n'-a)^m})_{(-\check{q}_{n'-a})^{a}} \\
&\simeq \begin{cases}
\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{2m}})_{(-1)^m} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n'-a-b)^m})_{(-\check{q}_{n'-a-b})^{a-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}, \\
\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2 \rceil}})_{(-q_s)^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2 \rfloor}})_{(-q_s)^{\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n'-a-b)^m})_{(-q_s)^{a-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}, \\
\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n'-a-b)^m})_{(-q)^{a-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)},
\end{cases}
\end{aligned} \tag{5.14b}$$

for $a, b < n'$ with $\min(a,b) = 1$. Here we understand $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-a-b)})$ as the trivial module $\mathbf{1}$ when $l - a - b = 0$.

(b) *For $\mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}$ and $l > n$, take $b \in [1, 2n-1]$ with $l - 1 > n$, $l - b < n$ and $1 + b < l$ if there are. Then we have*

$$\mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-b)^m})_{(-q)^{-b+1}} \nabla \mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-1)^m})_{-(-q)} \simeq \mathtt{W}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}(\boxed{(l-1-b)^m})_{(-q)^{-b+2}}. \tag{5.14c}$$

Proof. Since the proof is similar, we give only the proof of (5.14a). Without loss of generality, we set $a = 1$. Note that we have

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-b)^m})_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{-b}} \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1-b)^m})_{(-\check{q}_{l-1-b})^{-b+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-\check{q}_1)^{1-l}},$$

and

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-\check{q}_1)^{1-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^m})_{(-\check{q}_{l-1})} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})$$

by (5.10a). Hence we have the sequence of homomorphism

$$\begin{aligned}&\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{-b}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-1})}\\ &\quad \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-1-b})^{-b+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_1)^{1-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-1})}\\ &\quad \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-1-b})^{-b+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)\end{aligned}$$

whose composition does not vanish by Proposition 2.3. Since $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-1-b})^{-b+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)$ is simple by the i-box argument, the assertion follows. $\square$

By (5.4) from Proposition 5.7 and (5.6) from Proposition 5.8, we have a generalization of the T-system, which recovers the usual T-system (3.9) as a particular case at $b = 1$.

Theorem 5.18 (Generalized T-system)**.** *Consider a classical untwisted affine type $\mathfrak{g} = A_{n-1}^{(1)}$, $B_n^{(1)}$, $C_n^{(1)}$, $D_n^{(1)}$, and assume $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$, $l < n' := n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)})$, and $1 < b+1 \leq l$. Then we have*

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{d}\big(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{-b}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-1})}\big) &= 1,\\ \mathfrak{d}\big(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-1})}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-b}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{1-m-b}}\big) &= 1,\end{aligned} \tag{5.15a}$$

and hence short exact sequences as follows: For $l < n'$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{-b}} \mathbin{\Delta} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-1})}&\\ \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{-b}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-1})}&\\ \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-1-b})^{1-b}} \to 0,&\end{aligned} \tag{5.15b}$$

$$\begin{aligned}0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n'-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{n'-b})^{-b}} \mathbin{\Delta} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n'-1)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{n'-1})}&\\ \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n'-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{n'-b})^{-b}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n'-1)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{n'-1})}&\\ \to \begin{cases}\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^m} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{n'-1-b})^{1-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)},\\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2\rceil}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2\rfloor}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1-b)^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{1-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)},\\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{1-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)},\end{cases}&\\ \to 0,&\end{aligned} \tag{5.15c}$$

where the left and right terms are real simple modules. Additionally, for $\mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{d}\big(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{-b}}, \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{-(-\check{q}_{l-1})}\big) &= 1,\\ \mathfrak{d}\big(\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{-(-\check{q}_{l-1})}, \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l-b}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{1-m-b}}\big) &= 1,\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}0 \to \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}} \mathbin{\Delta} \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{-(-q)}&\\ \to \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^m}\big)_{-(-q)}&\\ \to \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-1-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{1-b}} \to 0&\end{aligned} \tag{5.15d}$$

for $n < l \leq 2n-1$ and b with $1+b \leq l$ and $l-b < n < l-1$, where the left and right terms are real simple modules.

We note that the left and right terms being real simple modules in the short exact sequences above follow from Proposition 2.10.

The socle of the classical T-system (equivalently $b = 1$) is not prime if and only if $m > 1$ (see Appendix C), but we can see by Example 5.20 below that sometimes we obtain prime simple modules as the socle when $b > 1$. Therefore, we pose the following problem.

Problem 5.19. *Determine when the socle in (5.15) for $b > 1$ is prime.*

Example 5.20. Consider type $\mathfrak{g} = A_3^{(1)}$ with $l = 3$, $m = 2$, and $b = 2$. We can see that the socle $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-q)^{-2}} \Delta \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^2})_{(-q)}$ in (5.15), which in this case is

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-q)^{-2}} \Delta \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^2})_{(-q)} \to \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^2})_{(-q)} \to \mathtt{V}(\boxed{3^2}) \to 0, \tag{5.16}$$

is prime by looking at the dimensions of all possible factorizations.

Let $\mathcal{M}$ be a monomial in the variables $\{\mathcal{Y}_{i,k} := Y_{i,(-q)^k} \mid i \in I_0,\ k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ (cf. (5.2)), and denote $V(\mathcal{M})$ the corresponding simple module whose Drinfel'd polynomials are given by $\mathcal{M}$. For example, we have $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-q)^{-2}} \Delta \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^2})_{(-q)} \simeq V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2})$. By general weight theory, we see that for $V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) \simeq M \otimes N$, we must have $M = V(\mathcal{M})$ and $N = V(\mathcal{N})$, where $\mathcal{M}\mathcal{N} = \mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}$ with $\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}$ being monomials in the variables $\{\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}, \mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}, \mathcal{Y}_{2,0}, \mathcal{Y}_{2,2}\}$. By using the higher Dorey's rule, the denominator formulas between fundamentals (Appendix E.1), and the dimensions of KR modules (e.g., via their decomposition into $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules), we can compute the required dimensions:

$$\begin{gathered}
\dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,k}) = 4, \qquad \dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{2,k}) = 6, \\
\dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}) = 10, \qquad \dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}) = \dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) = 20, \\
\dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) = 20, \qquad \dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) = \dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}) = 24, \\
\dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) = 80, \qquad \dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) = 60, \\
\dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) = 45, \qquad \dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}) = 60, \\
\dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) = 190.
\end{gathered}$$

Hence, we see that no product of any nontrivial (complementary) pair of dimensions equals the requisite 190, and so it remains to compute these dimensions. We begin with (for any $m \in \mathbb{Z}$)

$$\begin{gathered}
\dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,k}) = \dim \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}) = \dim V(\Lambda_1), \qquad \dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{2,k}) = \dim \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2}) = \dim V(\Lambda_2), \\
\dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}) = \dim \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-q)^{-2}} = \dim V(2\Lambda_1), \quad \dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) = \dim \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^2})_{(-q)} = \dim V(2\Lambda_2),
\end{gathered}$$

which are all computable by many methods (e.g., Weyl's denominator formula, Kashiwara crystals); the denominator formulas (between fundamental modules) say that

$$V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^3} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2})_{(-q)^2}, \qquad V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}) \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2});$$

Dorey's rule says that

$$\dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,k}\mathcal{Y}_{2,k+3}) = \dim \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^k} \cdot \dim \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2})_{(-q)^{k+3}} - \dim \mathtt{V}(\boxed{3})_{(-q)^{k+2}}$$

with $\dim \mathtt{V}(\boxed{3^m})_{(-q)^{k+2}} = \dim V(m\Lambda_3)$; and by using (5.16), we compute

$$\dim V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) = \dim \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2}) \cdot \dim \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^2}) - \dim \mathtt{V}(\boxed{3^2}) = 10 \cdot 20 - 10 = 190.$$

For the remaining cases, we use the denominator formulas in Lemma 7.3 below to see

$$V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^2})_{-q}, \qquad V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}) \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2}),$$

and we see that from the denominator formulas (7.4) and (7.8a) that the remaining two tensor products

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^2})_{(-q)} \simeq V(\Lambda_1) \otimes V(2\Lambda_2) \simeq V(\Lambda_1 + 2\Lambda_2) \oplus V(\Lambda_2 + \Lambda_3), \tag{5.17a}$$

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2})_{(-q)^2} \simeq V(2\Lambda_1) \otimes V(\Lambda_2) \simeq V(2\Lambda_1 + \Lambda_2) \oplus V(\Lambda_1 + \Lambda_3), \tag{5.17b}$$

where the isomorphisms are as $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules, are not simple. Since the $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-decomposition consists of a direct sum of two simple modules, by considering the highest weights, we must have

$$V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) \simeq V(\Lambda_1 + 2\Lambda_2), \qquad V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}) \simeq V(2\Lambda_1 + \Lambda_2),$$

which finishes our dimension computations (the other composition factor in the tensor products (5.17) are $V(\mathcal{Y}_{2,2}\mathcal{Y}_{3,-1})$ and $V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{3,1})$, respectively).

We also note that we could refine the verification that $V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2})$ is prime by this using q-characters, which could then be performed using the Frenkel–Mukhin (FM) algorithm [FM01] using a computer. Additionally, the q-character for $V(\mathcal{Y}_{1,-3}\mathcal{Y}_{1,-1}\mathcal{Y}_{2,0}\mathcal{Y}_{2,2})$ contains two dominant monomials, and so this is not a special module (in the sense of [FM01]).

Finally, we note from (5.16), we can also see that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-q)^{-2}} \,\Delta\, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^2})_{(-q)} \simeq V(2\Lambda_1 + 2\Lambda_2) + V(\Lambda_1 + \Lambda_2 + \Lambda_3)$$

as $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules.

Proof of (5.10d). (i) Note that the case when $l = n-1$ or $n = 2$ coincides with T-system in (5.9). Note that we have the non-zero composition

$$\begin{aligned}
c_1 \colon \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-3}} &\otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-1)^m q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m+1}} \\
&\simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-1)^m q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m+1}} \\
&\rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-5}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-1)^m q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m-5}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-1)^m q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m+1}} \\
&\twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-5}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^2})_{(-1)^{m+1} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m-2}}
\end{aligned}$$

by Proposition 2.3. Note that,

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^2})_{(-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m-2}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})}) = 0$$

by Lemma 5.5, since $n \geq 2$. Thus the sequence of real simple modules

$$(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^2})_{(-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m-2}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-5}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}}) \text{ is normal,}$$

by Lemma 2.17 (a-iii). Then we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{soc}(\mathtt{V}&(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-5}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^2})_{(-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m-2}}) \\
&\simeq \mathrm{hd}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^2})_{(-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-5}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}}) \ (\because \text{Lemma 2.15 (2.4)}) \\
&\simeq \mathrm{hd}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^2})_{(-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m-2}})_{(-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2}} \ (\because \text{an induction on } m) \\
&\simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}})_{(-1)^{m+1}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus the image of $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m+1}}$ under c_1 contains $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}})_{(-1)^m}$. Then the composition

$$\begin{aligned}
c_2 \colon \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^3} &\rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-1)^m q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m+1}} \\
&\xrightarrow{c_1} \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-5}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^2})_{(-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m-2}}
\end{aligned} \tag{5.18}$$

does not vanish by Proposition 5.3. Hence we can conclude that

$$\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^{m+1}} \subseteq \mathrm{Im}(c_2).$$

On the other hand, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-3}}, \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{3}}) \le 1$$

by Proposition 5.9(a). Moreover, by the induction hypothesis on $m \ge 2$, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-3}}, \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{3}}) = 1.$$

From Lemma 5.4(v), c_2 in not injective and hence

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-3}}, \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{3}}) = 1$$

and the composition length of $\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-3}} \otimes \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{3}}$ is 2. Thus we have

$$\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^{m+1}} \simeq \mathrm{Im}(c_2) \text{ indeed}$$

and

$$\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-3}} \nabla \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{3}} \simeq \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^{m+1}},$$

which completes the assertion for $l = n-2$.

(ii) Now let us prove the assertion for $l = 1$. Note that we now have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n+2}} \otimes \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} &\twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m}}\big),\\
\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m}}\big) \otimes \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n}} &\twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2}},\\
\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}}\big) \otimes \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-1}} &\twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{3}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Now we claim that the sequence of real simple modules

$$(\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n+2}}, \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})}, \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n}}) \text{ is normal.} \tag{5.19}$$

Note that

- $\mathrm{rch}(\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+4}}) = [-2m+n+5, 2m+n+3]$,
- $\mathrm{exrch}_1(\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n}}) = [-2m+n+1, 2m+3n-3]$.

Since $n > 3$, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n+2}}, \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+4}}, \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n}}) = 0,$$

which implies (5.19) by Lemma 2.17.

Hence we have the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n+2}} \otimes \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \otimes \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n}} \arrow[r, two heads] \arrow[dr, two heads] & \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m}}\big) \otimes \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n}} \arrow[r, two heads] & \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2}} \\
& \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n+2}} \otimes \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4}} \arrow[ur, two heads] &
\end{tikzcd} \tag{5.20}$$

Thus we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n+2}} \otimes \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2}}\\
\iff\ & \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n+2}} \otimes \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n+2}}\\
\iff\ & \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n}} \otimes \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big),
\end{aligned}$$

as we desired.

(iii) Now let us apply an induction on $l \geq 1$. Note that we have the homomorphism ($d = -n+m-l+1$)

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^{2m}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^d q_{\mathsf{s}}^{n+l}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^d q_{\mathsf{s}}^{n+2-l}}$$

by the induction. Note that the sequence $(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-l}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^{2m}}\big), \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^d q_{\mathsf{s}}^{n+l}})$ is normal as

- $\mathrm{exrch}_{n'}(\mathscr{D}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-l}})) = [-2m+n-l, 2m+4n-l+2]$,
- $\mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^d q_{\mathsf{s}}^{n+l}}) = [2-2m+n+l, 2m-2+n+l]$,

where $n' = \mathrm{clr}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^d q_{\mathsf{s}}^{n+l}}) \in \{n, n+1\}$ for a fixed skeleton category containing them.

Hence we have the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^{2m}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^d q_{\mathsf{s}}^{n+l}} \arrow[r, two heads] \arrow[dr, two heads] & \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^d q_{\mathsf{s}}^{n+2-l}} \arrow[r, two heads] & \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^d (q_{\mathsf{s}})^{n-l}} \\
& \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^d q_{\mathsf{s}}^{n+l}} \arrow[ur, two heads] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

by using the homomorphism in (5.10a). Hence we have

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{2m}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^d q_{\mathsf{s}}^{n+l}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^d (q_{\mathsf{s}})^{n-l}}$$

which is equivalent to

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^{d+1}(q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-n-1+l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^{d+1} q_{\mathsf{s}}^{n+1-l}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{2m}}\big)$$

as we desired. Thus the assertion follows. □

The following corollary can be also understood as a generalization of T-system.

Corollary 5.21. *For $\mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}$, we have*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-3}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^3}) = 1, \qquad \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-3}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{2m+1}}) = 1,$$

and hence we have the short exact sequence

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-3}} \,\Delta\, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^3} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^3} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}}\big) \to 0, \tag{5.21}$$

where the left and right terms are real simple modules.

The fact that the left and right terms in (5.21) are due to Proposition 2.10.

Proof for (5.10e). The assertion for $n-2$ coincides with T-system in (3.9). Thus now we consider when $k = n-3$. Note that we have the non-zero composition

$$\begin{aligned}
c_1 \colon \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)}\big)_{(-q)^{m+1}} \\
\simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)}\big)_{(-q)^{m+1}} \\
\rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{m-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)}\big)_{(-q)^{m+1}} \\
\twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-3}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}}
\end{aligned}$$

by Proposition 2.3. Note that,

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-3}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)}) = 0$$

by Lemma 5.5. Thus the sequence of real simple modules

$$(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-3}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-3}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)}) \text{ is normal,}$$

by Lemma 2.17 (a-iii). Then we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{soc}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-3})_{(-q)^{m-1}}) \\
&\simeq \mathrm{hd}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-3})_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}})_{(-q)}) \ (\because \text{Lemma 2.15 (2.4)}) \\
&\simeq \mathrm{hd}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-3})_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \ \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-3)^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}) \ (\because \text{an induction on } m) \\
&\simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-3)^m}).
\end{aligned}$$

Thus the image of $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)})_{(-q)^{m+1}}$ under c_1 contains $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-3)^m})$ Then the composition

$$\begin{aligned}
c_2\colon \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q)^2}& \\
\rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)})_{(-q)^{m+1}}& \\
\xrightarrow{c_1} \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-3})_{(-q)^{m-1}}&
\end{aligned} \tag{5.22}$$

does not vanish by Proposition 5.3. Hence we can conclude that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-3)^m}) \subseteq \mathrm{Im}(c_2).$$

On the other hand, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q)^{-2}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q)^2}) \le 1$$

by Proposition 5.9 (b). Moreover, by the induction hypothesis on $m \ge 2$, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-2}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}})_{(-q)^2}) = 1.$$

From Lemma 5.4(v), c_2 in not injective and hence

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q)^{-2}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q)^2}) = 1$$

and the composition length of $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q)^2}$ is 2. Thus we have

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-3)^m}) \simeq \mathrm{Im}(c_2) \text{ indeed}$$

and

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q)^{-2}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q)^2} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-3)^m}),$$

which completes the assertion for $l = n-3$.

Based on the assertions for $l \in \{n-2, n-3\}$, we can obtain the assertion for $l = 1$ as the proof of (5.10d) (ii). Then for $l \ge 1$, we can apply an induction as the proof of (5.10d) (iii) with the consideration on the parity of $n-l$. □

Corollary 5.22. *For $\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)}$, we have*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q)^{-2}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q)^2}) = 1 \quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^2}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{m+1}}) = 1,$$

and hence we have the short exact sequence

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q)^{-2}} \Delta \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q)^2} \to \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-q)^2} \to \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-3)^m}) \to 0,$$

where the left and right terms are real simple modules by Proposition 2.10.

5.3. **Twisted classical affine types.** In this subsection, we briefly explain how we can obtain the higher Dorey's rule for twisted affine type from the ones of untwisted affine type.

In [KKKO15b], the exact monoidal functor $\mathcal{F}_A^0$, called the exact generalized Schur–Weyl duality functor, between

$$\mathcal{F}_A^0 : \mathscr{C}^0_{A_n^{(1)}} \to \mathscr{C}^0_{A_n^{(2)}}$$

sending $\mathcal{V}^{(1)}(\imath, p)$ to $\mathcal{V}^{(2)}(\imath, p)$ and simple modules to simple modules bijectively. In particular, it sends KR modules $\mathfrak{R}[a,b]$ in $\mathscr{C}^0_{A_n^{(1)}}$ to KR modules $\mathfrak{R}[a,b]$ in $\mathscr{C}^0_{A_n^{(2)}}$. Thus the higher Dorey's rule for untwisted affine type $A_n^{(1)}$ implies the one for $A_n^{(2)}$.

On the other hand, there currently is no known such functor between (i) $\mathscr{C}^0_{D_{n+1}^{(1)}}$ and $\mathscr{C}^0_{D_{n+1}^{(2)}}$; (ii) $E_6^{(1)}$ and $E_6^{(2)}$; and (iii) $D_4^{(1)}$ and $D_4^{(3)}$. However, for each Q-datum $\mathcal{Q}$ of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g}^{(1)})$ and $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g}^{(2)})$, there exists an exact monoidal functor $\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{1,t}$ in [KKKO16, OS19b] (see also [Fuj22a, Nao21]) between $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(1)}$ and $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}$ $(t = 2, 3)$ sending $\mathcal{V}^{(1)}(\imath, p)$ in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(1)}$ to $\mathcal{V}^{(2)}(\imath, p)$ in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(2)}$, and simple modules to simple modules in their categories bijectively. It also sends KR modules $\mathfrak{R}^{(1)}[a,b]$ in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(1)}$ to KR modules $\mathfrak{R}^{(t)}[a,b]$ in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}$ $(t = 2, 3)$. Moreover,

- $\mathfrak{d}(\mathcal{V}^{(1)}(\imath, p), \mathcal{V}^{(1)}(\jmath, s)) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathcal{V}^{(t)}(\imath, p), \mathcal{V}^{(t)}(\jmath, s))$ $(t = 2, 3)$ [Oh15];
- the (twisted) q-characters of KR modules for $\mathfrak{g}^{(r)}$ can be defined in terms of the corresponding q-characters of $\mathfrak{g}^{(1)}$ [Her10a].

Then, using the same framework of untwisted affine type, we can obtain the following results:

Proposition 5.23. *Let $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ be a quantum affine algebra of twisted type $D_{n+1}^{(2)}$. Consider $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$ and $1 \leq k, l < n$ such that $k + l < n$. Then the highest weight $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module $V(m\Lambda_{k+l})$ appears exactly once in the $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$ restriction of the following modules:*

(a) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_l)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)^{l}}$,
(b) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)^{l+m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)^{l-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_l)^{-k}}$,
(c) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_k)^{l-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{m-1}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_l)^{-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k+l}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{k+1})^{m-1}}$.
(d) $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(k+l)^m}\big)$

In particular $k + l = n$, then $V(2m\Lambda_n)$ appears exactly once in the $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$ restriction of the modules (a)∼(c) *and* $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{\sqrt{-1}}$.

Proof. The proof is analogous to the proof of Proposition 5.1. □

Lemma 5.24. *Let $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 2}$ and $\mathfrak{g} = D_{n+1}^{(2)}$*

(i) *For $1 \leq k < n$ with $k + 1 < n$, there is no* injective *homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-q)} \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k+1}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}}$$

and no isomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)_{(-q)} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^m}\big).$$

(ii) *For $\mathfrak{g} = D_{n+1}^{(2)}$, there is no* injective *homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)}$$
$$\rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{\sqrt{-1}(-q)^{m-1}}$$

and no isomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-n+2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{\sqrt{-1}}.$$

(iii) *For* $\mathfrak{g} = D_{n+1}^{(2)}$*, there is no* injective *homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{\sqrt{-1}(-q)^2} \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{\sqrt{-1}(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-3}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-2}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}},$$

and no isomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{\sqrt{-1}(-q)^2} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^m}\big).$$

Proof. The proof is analogous to the proof of Lemma 5.4. □

Let us fix a compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$ of $\widehat{\blacktriangle}$.

Theorem 5.25 (Higher Dorey's rule twisted types)**.** *The higher Dorey's for classical twisted affine type holds. Namely, if there exists a homomorphism*

$$\mathfrak{R}^{(1)}[a_1,b_1] \otimes \mathfrak{R}^{(1)}[a_2,b_2] \twoheadrightarrow \bigotimes_{j\in J} \mathfrak{R}^{(1)}[c_j,d_j] \quad \text{in } \mathscr{C}^0_{\mathfrak{g}^{(1)}}$$

for KR modules $\mathfrak{R}^{(1)}[a_u,b_u]$ $(u=1,2)$ *and* $\mathfrak{R}^{(1)}[c_j,d_j]$ $(j\in J)$*, there exists a homomorphism*

$$\mathfrak{R}^{(t)}[a_1,b_1] \otimes \mathfrak{R}^{(t)}[a_2,b_2] \twoheadrightarrow \bigotimes_{j\in J} \mathfrak{R}^{(t)}[c_j,d_j] \quad \text{in } \mathscr{C}^0_{\mathfrak{g}^{(t)}} \quad \text{for } t=2,3,$$

where $\mathfrak{R}^{(t)}[a_u,b_u]$ $(u=1,2)$ *and* $\mathfrak{R}^{(2)}[c_j,d_j]$ $(j\in J)$ *are corresponding KR modules.*

6. Universal coefficient formulas and denominator formulas

From this section, we shall compute the denominator formulas between KR modules. In this section, we first collect the universal coefficient formulas to prepare the computations. Then we will present the denominator formulas, which will be proved in the next section.

6.1. **Universal coefficient formulas.** In this subsection, we will compute $a_{V,W}(z)$'s when V and W are KR modules as we will need them to show our denominator formulas. As we only need them for types $A_{n-1}^{(1)}$, $B_n^{(1)}$, $C_n^{(1)}$, and $D_n^{(1)}$, we restrict ourselves to these cases. For the twisted types, one can compute them in the similar way, and we leave the computation to the interested reader.

As mentioned in (3.3), the universal coefficient $a_{M,N}$ for KR module M,N can be obtained from $d_{M,N}(z)$ and $d_{\mathscr{D}N,M}(z)$. However, as we need $a_{M,N}$ to prove $d_{M,N}(z)$, we instead use *only* the fusion rule (3.1) (*cf.* (FR)) to compute $a_{M,N}$ here.

For $k\in\mathbb{Z}$, we will use the following notation

$$[k] := ((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^k z; p^{*2})_\infty, \qquad \langle k] := (-(-q)^k z; p^{*2})_\infty,$$
$${}_s[k]_{(t)} := ((-1)^t q_{\mathfrak{s}}^k z; p^{*2})_\infty, \qquad {}_s[k] := ((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^k z; p^{*2})_\infty.$$

Proposition 6.1. *Let* $\mathfrak{g}$ *be of type* $A_{n-1}^{(1)}$*. For* $k,l\in I_0$ *and* $p,m\in\mathbb{Z}_{\ge1}$*, set* $\mu_1 := \min(k,l,n-k,n-l)$ *and* $\mu_2 := \min(p,m)-1$*. We have*

$$a_{l^p,k^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\mu_1}\prod_{t=0}^{\mu_2} \frac{[n+|n-k-l|+|p-m|+2(s+t)][n-|n-k-l|-|p-m|-2(s+t)]}{[|k-l|+|p-m|+2(s+t)][2n-|k-l|-|p-m|-2(s+t)]}. \tag{6.1}$$

Proof. For simplicity, set

$$\mu_1 := \min(k, l, n-k, n-l) \quad \text{and} \quad \mu_2 = \min(p, m) - 1.$$

Recall

$$d_{k,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\mu_1} \left(z - (-q)^{2s+|k-l|}\right), \quad a_{k,l}(z) \equiv \frac{[|k-l|][2n-|k-l|]}{[k+l][2n-k-l]} \tag{6.2}$$

(see E.1 below). We prove the claim by using Theorem 2.1, (6.2) and a sequence of inductions. Indeed, we first show that

$$a_{1,1^m}(z) = \frac{[1-m][2n+m-1]}{[m+1][2n-(m+1)]}$$

by induction on m. Note that

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^1 z} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m} z} \arrow[r, "\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})\otimes -"] \arrow[d, "R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)^1 z) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{1-m} z}"'] & \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m}}\big)_{z} \arrow[dd, "R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{1,1^m}(z)"'] \\
\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^1 z} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m} z} \arrow[d, "\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^1 z} \otimes R^{\mathrm{univ}}_{1,1}((-q)^{1-m} z)"'] & \\
\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^1 z} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m} z} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big) \arrow[r] & \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m}}\big)_{z} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)
\end{tikzcd} \tag{6.3}$$

and hence

$$\begin{tikzcd}
u_1 \otimes u_{1^{m-1}} \otimes u_1 \arrow[r, mapsto] \arrow[d, mapsto] & u_1 \otimes u_{1^m} \arrow[dd, mapsto] \\
a_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z) u_{1^{m-1}} \otimes u_1 \otimes u_1 \arrow[d, mapsto] & \\
a_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z) a_{1,1}((-q)^{l-m} z) u_{1^{m-1}} \otimes u_1 \otimes u_1 \arrow[r, mapsto] & a_{1,1}(z) u_{1^m} \otimes u_1
\end{tikzcd} \tag{6.4}$$

where u_* denotes the dominant extremal weight vector of $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{*}\big)$. Then, by induction hypothesis, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
a_{1,1^m}(z) &= a_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z) a_{1,1}((-q)^{1-m} z) \\
&= \frac{[3-m][2n+m-1]}{[m+1][2n-m+1]} \times \frac{[1-m][2n+1-m]}{[3-m][2n-1-m]} = \frac{[1-m][2n+m-1]}{[m+1][2n-m-1]}.
\end{aligned} \tag{6.5}$$

We can then apply the same arguments as in (6.3) and (6.4) and a straightforward induction to obtain

$$a_{1,(n-1)^m}(z) = \frac{[n+m+1][n-m-1]}{[n+m-1][n-m+1]},$$

$$a_{k,1^m} = \frac{[k-m][2n-k+m]}{[k+m][2n-k-m]}, \qquad \text{and} \qquad a_{k,(n-1)^m}(z) = \frac{[n+m+k][n-m-k]}{[n-m+k][n+m-k]}.$$

Next, by a similar argument we compute

$$a_{1,k^m}(z) = \frac{[k-m][2n+m-k]}{[m+k][2n-k-m]} \qquad \text{and} \qquad a_{(n-1),k^m}(z) = \frac{[n+m+k][n-m-k]}{[n-m+k][n+m-k]}.$$

By again using the same arguments as in (6.3) and (6.4), we have

$$a_{l,k^m}(z)=\prod_{s=1}^{\mu_1}\frac{[n+|n-l-k|+m-1+2s][n-|n-l-k|-m+1-2s]}{[|k-l|+m-1+2s][2n-|k-l|-m+1-2s]} \tag{6.6}$$

by assuming $l\le k$ without loss of generality and an induction on $\min(l,k,n-k,n-l)$, where we split the induction step into the cases $l\le n-k$ and $l>n-k$. Note that our assertion for $m=1$ holds by (3.2) and (6.2). Finally, we have

$$\prod_{s=1}^{\mu_1}\prod_{t=0}^{\mu_2}\frac{[n+|n-k-l|+|p-m|+2(s+t)][n-|n-k-l|-|p-m|-2(s+t)]}{[|k-l|+|p-m|+2(s+t)][2n-|k-l|-|p-m|-2(s+t)]}$$

by a straightforward induction on p. Note that we can assume that $\min(p,m)=p$ since $d_{l^p,k^m}(z)=d_{k^m,l^p}(z)$ (implying $a_{l^p,k^m}(z)=a_{k^m,l^p}(z)$) and splitting the induction step into cases when $l\le n-k$ and $l>n-k$. □

The sequence of steps we used to prove Proposition 6.1 will be the same those used to compute the universal coefficients between KR modules. This will hold for all types and all proofs will be similar to the proof of Proposition 6.1. Therefore, we omit the proofs for the remaining cases by using the denominator formulas between fundamental modules and universal coefficients, which can be found in [AK97, KKK15, Oh15, OS19b] (see Appendix E.1 below for the the denominator formulas and Appendix D for universal coefficients).

Proposition 6.2. *Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be of type $B_n^{(1)}$. For $1\le k,l<n$ and $m,p\ge 1$, set $\mu_1:=\min(p,m)-1$, $\mu_2:=\min(2p,m)-1$, and $d:=m+n+l+p$. Then we have*

$$\begin{aligned}
a_{l^p,k^m}(z)&=\prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)}\prod_{t=0}^{\mu_1}\biggl(\frac{[k+l-|m-p|-2(s+t)]\,\langle 2n-|k-l|-|m-p|-1-2(s+t)]}{[|k-l|+|m-p|+2(s+t)]\,\langle 2n+k+l-|m-p|-1-2(s+t)]}\\
&\qquad\times\frac{\langle 2n+|k-l|+|m-p|-1+2(s+t)]\,[4n-k-l+|m-p|-2+2(s+t)]}{\langle 2n-k-l+|m-p|-1+2(s+t)]\,[4n-|k-l|-|m-p|-2-2(s+t)]}\biggr),\\
a_{l^p,n^m}(z)&=\prod_{s=1}^{l}\prod_{t=0}^{\mu_2}\frac{{}_s[2n+2l-|2p-m|-4s-2t]_{(d)}\,{}_s[6n-2l-4+|2p-m|+4s+2t]_{(d)}}{{}_s[2n-2l-2+|2p-m|+4s+2t]_{(d)}\,{}_s[6n-2+2l-|2p-m|-4s-2t]_{(d)}},\\
a_{n^p,n^m}(z)&=\prod_{s=1}^{n}\prod_{t=0}^{\mu_1}\frac{{}_s[4n+4s+2t-4+|m-p|]_{(|m-p|)}\,{}_s[4n-4s-2t-|m-p|]_{(|m-p|)}}{{}_s[4s+2t-2+|m-p|]_{(|m-p|)}\,{}_s[8n-2-4s-2t-|m-p|]_{(|m-p|)}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Proof. The proof of $a_{l^p,k^m}(z)$ and $a_{n^p,n^m}(z)$ is similar to the proof of Proposition 6.1, but we split the induction step into the cases $k-l\le 0$ or not and $m-p\le 0$ or not.

The computation of $a_{k^m,n^p}(z)$ begins a little different than the previous calculations. Our assertion for $a_{1,n^2}(z)$ is a direct consequence of the computation $a_{1,n^m}(z)=a_{1,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)a_{1,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}z)$. Therefore, our assertion for $a_{1,n^m}(z)$, for $m\ge 3$, can be obtained by the usual induction $a_{1,n^m}(z)=a_{1,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)a_{1,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-m}z)$. Next, we compute $a_{l,n^m}(z)$ from induction on l with $a_{l,n^m}(z)=a_{l-1,n^m}((-q)^{-1}z)a_{1,n^m}((-q)^{l-1}z)$. Similarly, we compute $a_{^p,n}(z)$ from induction on p with $a_{l^p,n}(z)=a_{l^{p-1},n}((-q)z)a_{l,n}((-q)^{1-p}z)$. Based on the previous computation, we can obtain our desired formula by the induction steps into cases $|2p-m|\le 0$ and $|2p-m|>0$. □

Proposition 6.3. *Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be of type $C_n^{(1)}$. For $1 \leq k, l < n$ and $m, p \geq 1$, set $\mu_1 := \min(p, m) - 1$, $\mu_2 := \min(p, 2m) - 1$, and $d := m + n + l + p$. Then we have*

$$a_{l^p,k^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} \prod_{t=0}^{\mu_1} \bigg(\frac{{}_s[k+l-|m-p|-2s-2t]_s[4n+4-k-l+|m-p|+2s+2t]}{{}_s[|k-l|+|m-p|+2s+2t]_s[4n+4-|k-l|-|m-p|-2s-2t]} \times \frac{{}_s[2n+2+|k-l|+|m-p|+2s+2t]_s[2n+2-|k-l|-|m-p|-2s-2t]}{{}_s[2n+2-k-l+|m-p|+2s+2t]_s[2n+2+k+l-|m-p|-2s-2t]} \bigg),$$

$$a_{l^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l} \prod_{t=0}^{\mu_2} \frac{{}_s[n+1+l-|2m-p|-2s-2t]_{(d)\,s}[3n+3-l+|2m-p|+2s+2t]_{(d)}}{{}_s[n+1-l+|2m-p|+2s+2t]_{(d)\,s}[3n+3+l-|2m-p|-2s-2t]_{(d)}},$$

$$a_{n^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n} \prod_{t=0}^{\mu_1} \frac{{}_s[2n+4+|2m-2p|+2s+4t]_{(m+p)\,s}[2n-|2m-2p|-2s-4t]_{(m+p)}}{{}_s[2+|2m-2p|+2s+4t]_{(m+p)\,s}[4n+2-|2m-2p|-2s-4t]_{(m+p)}}.$$

Proposition 6.4. *Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be of type $D_n^{(1)}$. For $1 \leq k, l < n-1$ and $m, p \geq 1$, set $\mu := \min(p, m) - 1$, and we have*

$$a_{l^p,k^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} \prod_{t=0}^{\mu} \bigg(\frac{[k+l-|m-p|-2(s+t))][2n-2+|k-l|+|m-p|+2(s+t)]}{[|k-l|+|m-p|+2(s+t)][2n-2+k+l-|m-p|-2(s+t)]} \times \frac{[2n-2-|k-l|-|m-p|-2(s+t)][4n-k-l+|m-p|-4+2(s+t))]}{[2n-k-l+|m-p|-2+2(s+t)][4n-4-|k-l|-|m-p|-2(s+t)]} \bigg),$$

$$a_{l^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l} \prod_{t=0}^{\mu} \frac{[3n-l-3+|p-m|+2(s+t)][n-1+l-|p-m|-2(s+t)]}{[n-l-1+|p-m|+2(s+t)][3n-3+l-|p-m|-2(s+t)]},$$

$$a_{n^p,n^m}(z) = a_{(n-1)^p,(n-1)^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor} \frac{[2n+4s+2t-4+|m-p|][2n-4s-2t-|m-p|]}{[4s+2t-2+|m-p|][4n-2-4s-2t-|m-p|]},$$

$$a_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor (n-1)/2 \rfloor} \frac{[2n+4s+2t+|m-p|-2][2n-4s-2t-|m-p|-2]}{[4s+2t+|m-p|][4n-4s-2t-|m-p|-4]}.$$

6.2. **Denominator formulas.** In this subsection, we will present our main result on the denominator formulas $d_{k^m,l^p}(z)$. Note that when $\max(m, p) = 1$, the result is known in [AK97, DO94, KKK15, Oh15, OS19b]. For the rest of this paper, we will deal with the quantum affine algebras.

Theorem 6.5. *For untwisted affine types $A_n^{(1)}$, $B_n^{(1)}$, and $D_n^{(1)}$, we have*

$$d_{k^m,l^p}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1} d_{k,l}\big((-q)^{-|p-m|-2t} z\big) \qquad (k, l \in I_0) \tag{6.7}$$

unless $\mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}$ and $\max(k, l) = n$. In that case, take $l < k = n$, and we have

$$d^{B_n^{(1)}}_{l^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(2p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-1)^{n+l+p+m} (q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+|2p-m|+4s+2t}),$$

$$d^{B_n^{(1)}}_{n^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1} d_{n,n}\big((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-|p-m|-2t} z\big).$$

For affine type $C_n^{(1)}$, $\max(m,p) > 1$, and $1 \le k,l < n$, we have

$$d^{C_n^{(1)}}_{k^{2m},l^p}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(2m,p)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|k-l|+|2m-p|+2s+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k-l+|2m-p|+2s+2t}),$$

$$d^{C_n^{(1)}}_{l^p,n^m}(z) = d^{C_n^{(1)}}_{n^m,l^p}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,2m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z-(-1)^{n+p+l+m} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+|2m-p|+2s+2t}),$$

$$d^{C_n^{(1)}}_{n^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{n} (z-(-1)^{m+p} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+|2m-2p|+2s+4t}).$$

while we have

$$d^{C_n^{(1)}}_{k,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l,n-k,n-l)} \big(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|k-l|+2s}\big) \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} \big(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k-l+2s}\big) \qquad (k,l \in I_0).$$

Furthermore, if (i) $k \neq l < n$ *or* (ii) $\min(k,l) = 1$ *and* $k,l < n$, *we have*

$$d^{C_n^{(1)}}_{k^m,l^p}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|k-l|+|m-p|+2(s+t)})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k-l+|m-p|+2(s+t)}).$$

Conjecture 6.6. *Let $m,p \in 2\mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}+1$, $k<n$ and $\mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}$. Then we have the following:*

$$d_{k^m,k^p}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{k} (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|m-p|+2(s+t)})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-2k+|m-p|+2(s+t)}).$$

Theorem 6.7. *For untwisted affine types $A_{N-1}^{(2)}$, $D_{n+1}^{(2)}$, and $D_4^{(3)}$, we have*

$$d_{k^m,l^p}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1} d_{k,l}\big((-q)^{-|p-m|-2t} z\big) \qquad (k,l \in I_0)$$

unless $\mathfrak{g} = D_{n+1}^{(2)}$ and $\max(k,l) = n$. In that case, take $l < k = n$, and we have

$$d^{D_{n+1}^{(2)}}_{l^p,n^m}(z) = d^{D_{n+1}^{(2)}}_{n^m,l^p}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z^2+(-1)^{n+l+p+m} q^{n-l+|p-m|+2(s+t)}),$$

$$d^{D_{n+1}^{(2)}}_{n^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{n} (z+(-1)^{s+t+p+m} q^{2s+2t+|p-m|}).$$

Conjecture 6.8. *Equation (6.7) holds for types $E_{6,7,8}^{(1)}$ and $E_6^{(2)}$.*

Remark 6.9.

(a) Using (3.3) and the denominator formulas in this subsection, we can also obtain the universal coefficients in the previous subsection, in which the denominator formulas are conjectural at this moment.

(b) Comparing the denominator formulas $A_n^{(1)}$ and $A_n^{(2)}$ (resp. $D_{n+1}^{(1)}$ and $D_{n+1}^{(2)}$, $D_4^{(1)}$ and $D_4^{(3)}$), one can see that $\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}^{(1)}[a_1,b_1], \mathfrak{R}^{(1)}[a_2,b_2]) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}^{(t)}[a_1,b_1], \mathfrak{R}^{(t)}[a_2,b_2])$ for i-boxes $[a_u,b_u]$ $(u=1,2)$.

Note that our one of the main tools will be Proposition 3.4, which means we will be computing formulas of the form

$$\frac{f(z)}{d_{M,N}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{d_{M,N}(z)}{g(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

where $f, g \in \mathbf{k}[z]$ split (i.e., equal a product of linear factors), to determine $d_{M,N}(z)$. If ρ is a root of $f(z)$ (resp. $g(z)$) with multiplicity m_ρ, then the multiplicity of the root ρ in $d_{M,N}(z)$ is bounded above (resp. below) by m_ρ. We say there is an *ambiguity* for the root ρ if the multiplicity of ρ has not been uniquely determined. Our proof of Theorem 6.7 relies on the generalized Schur–Weyl duality functors which will be explained.

Note that the denominator formula $d_{l^p,k^m}(z)$ for all simply-laced affine types (among others) is presented uniformly and based solely on the $d_{l,k}(z)$ values.

The next section is devoted to proving these results. We will give full details in type $A_{n-1}^{(1)}$, and then we will proceed by skipping some the intermediate computations as the additional calculations, while lengthy and slightly technical, are all similar and straightforward.

Remark 6.10. We remark here that, for Conjecture 6.6, it is hard to remove the ambiguities when $|m-p|$ is relatively small, while we do not have such ambiguity when $|m-p|$ is relatively big (see Proposition 7.48).

7. Proofs of denominator formulas

In this section, we will prove the denominator formulas. Throughout this section, we will compute them for each untwisted classical affine type and apply the framework of [AK97, KKK15, Oh15].

7.1. **Proof for type $A_{n-1}^{(1)}$.** Recall the denominator formulas and universal coefficients in (6.2) and we have set

$$\mu_1 := \min(k, l, n-k, n-l) \quad \text{and} \quad \mu_2 = \min(p, m) - 1.$$

Note that, as special cases of Dorey's rule in Theorem 3.15, we have

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k-1})_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{k-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{1-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l-1})_{-q} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})$$

for $2 \le k, l \le n-1$.

We start with the lemma below on $d_{1,k^2}(z) := d_{\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}),\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})}$ and $d_{n-1,k^2}(z) := d_{\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1}),\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})}$, for $k \in I_0$ as we require this special case by using $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants in §2.2:

Lemma 7.1. *For $k \in I_0$, we have*

$$d_{1,k^2}(z) = (z - (-q)^{k+2}) \qquad \textit{and} \qquad d_{n-1,k^2}(z) = (z - (-q)^{n-k+2}).$$

Proof. We show $d_{1,k^2}(z) = (z-(-q)^{k+2})$ as the proof of $d_{n-1,k^2}(z) = (z-(-q)^{n-k+2})$ is similar under the Dynkin diagram automorphism $\vee : i \leftrightarrow n-i$. Since $d_{1,k}(z) = (z-(-q)^{k+1})$, it is enough to see

(i) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^{k+2}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+3}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+1}})$ and

(ii) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^{k}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k-1}})$,

by Proposition 2.9.

(i) Note that $\mathscr{D}^{-1}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}) \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{(-q)^{-n}}$,

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+3}}) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{(-q)^{-n}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+3}}) = 0$$

which can be derived from $d_{k,l}(z)$ in (6.2). Hence Lemma 2.12 (ii) implies the first assertion

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^{k+2}}) = 1.$$

Similarly, we obtain $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^{n-k+2}}) = 1$.
(ii) Note that

$$\mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})) = [0] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{exrch}_1(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^k}) = [-2, 2k+2].$$

Hence Theorem 3.12 and (3.8) say that

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^k}) = 0$$

as we desired. Similarly, $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^{n-k}}) = 0$. $\square$

In proving the following lemmas, we will often invoke Proposition 3.4 without reference.

Lemma 7.2. *For any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$, we have*

$$d_{1,1^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{m+1}) \quad \text{and} \quad d_{1,(n-1)^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{n+m-1}). \tag{7.1}$$

Proof. By fusion rules,

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{(-q)^{n+m-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

(3.4) in Proposition 3.4 says that

$$\frac{d_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)d_{1,1}((-q)^{1-m}z)}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{(z-(-q)^{m-1})(z-(-q)^{m+1})}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.2a}$$

$$\frac{d_{1,1}((-q)^{m-1}z)d_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{(z-(-q)^{3-m})(z-(-q)^{m+1})}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}] \tag{7.2b}$$

by an induction on m. Here we remark that the part in (3.4) consisting of universal coefficients arising from fusion rules are 1 as in (6.5).[1] Then an ambiguity happens at $m = 2$ for $(-q)$ by comparing (7.2a) and (7.2b). However, we already proved the case in Lemma 7.1.[2]

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{(-q)^{-n-m+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m}) \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)},$$

obtained from fusion rule by taking dual of $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{1-m}}$, says that we have

$$\frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)d_{1,(n-1)}((-q)^{-n-m+1}z)}{d_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{1,1^m}(z)a_{1,(n-1)}((-q)^{-n-m+1}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

by Lemma 3.1 and (3.4b) in Proposition 3.4. Applying the induction, we have

$$\frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)d_{1,(n-1)}((-q)^{-n-m+1}z)}{d_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)} \equiv \frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{2n+m-1})}{(z-(-q)^{m-1})},$$

and

$$\frac{a_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{1,1^m}(z)a_{1,(n-1)}((-q)^{-n-m+1}z)} = \frac{[2n-m-1][1-m]}{[-m-1][2n-m+1]} = \frac{(z-(-q)^{m-1})}{(z-(-q)^{m+1})},$$

by direct computation. Thus, we have

$$\frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{2n+m-1})}{(z-(-q)^{m-1})} \times \frac{(z-(-q)^{m-1})}{(z-(-q)^{m+1})} = \frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{2n+m-1})}{(z-(-q)^{m+1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.3}$$

Hence the first assertion follows from (7.2a), (7.2b) and (7.3). Similarly, the second assertion follows. $\square$

[1] Throughout this paper, we use this fact frequently without any other mention.
[2] Throughout this paper, we have to remove such ambiguities, which will be the main obstacle to overcome.

Lemma 7.3. *For any $1 < k < n-1$ and $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$, we have*

$$d_{k,1^m}(z) = (z - (-q)^{m+k}) \quad \text{and} \quad d_{k,(n-1)^m}(z) = (z - (-q)^{n-k+m}). \tag{7.4}$$

Proof. Our assertion for $k = 1$ or $n-1$ already is shown.

By an induction on m, fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big),$$

implies that we have

$$\frac{d_{k,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)d_{k,1}((-q)^{1-m}z)}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{(z-(-q)^{m+k-2})(z-(-q)^{m+k})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.5}$$

By Dorey's rule, we have

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k-1}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{k-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k}\big) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{1-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k-1}\big)_{(-q)} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k}\big),$$

Equation (3.4) in Proposition 3.4 implies that

$$\frac{(z-(-q)^{m+k})(z-(-q)^{-m-k+2})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{(z-(-q)^{m+k})(z-(-q)^{k-m-2})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.6}$$

by using induction on k and the universal coefficient formulas. Here we use

$$\frac{a_{k,1^m}(z)}{a_{k-1,1^m}((-q)^{-1}z)a_{1,1^m}((-q)^{k-1}z)} = \frac{[k-2+m][2n-m+k-2]}{[2n+m+k-2][k-2-m]} = \frac{(z-(-q)^{-m-k+2})}{(z-(-q)^{m-k+2})},$$
$$\frac{a_{k,1^m}(z)}{a_{1,1^m}((-q)^{1-k}z)a_{k-1,1^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{[m-k+2][2n-k-m+2]}{[2n-k+m+2][2-m-k]} = \frac{(z-(-q)^{k-m-2})}{(z-(-q)^{k+m-2})}.$$

By (7.6), an ambiguity happens at $k = 2$ for $(-q)^{-m}$. However, $(-q)^{-m}$ cannot be a root by (7.5).

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-1}\big)_{(-q)^{n+m-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}},$$

implies that we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{d_{k,1^m}(z)d_{k,(n-1)}((-q)^{-n-m+1}z)}{d_{k,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{k,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{k,1^m}(z)a_{k,(n-1)}((-q)^{-n-m+1}z)} \\ &\qquad = \frac{d_{k,1^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{2n+m-k})}{z-(-q)^{m+k}} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \end{aligned} \tag{7.7}$$

by direct computation. Thus, (7.6) and (7.7) imply the first assertion. Similarly, the second assertion follows. □

The following lemma can be proved by using the similar argument of previous lemma.

Lemma 7.4. *For any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ and $1 \leq k \leq n-1$, we have*

$$d_{1,k^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{m+k}), \tag{7.8a}$$

$$d_{1,(n-k)^m}(z) = d_{n-1,k^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{n+m-k}). \tag{7.8b}$$

Lemma 7.5. *For any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ and $1 \leq k, l \leq n-1$, we have*

$$d_{l,k^m}(z) = d_{n-l,(n-k)^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l,n-k,n-l)} (z-(-q)^{|k-l|+m-1+2s}).$$

Proof. Since $d_{l,k^m}(z) = d_{n-l,(n-k)^m}(z)$, we assume that $l \le k$ without loss of generality.
(a) Assume $l \le n-k$. By the homomorphisms,

$$\text{(i)} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{1-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l-1})_{-q} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l}) \quad \text{and} \quad \text{(ii)} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{(-q)^{n-l+1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l-1})_{(-q)}$$

we have

$$\text{(i)}' \ \frac{\prod_{s=1}^{l}\left(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-1+2s}\right)}{d_{l,k^m}(z)} \text{ and (ii)}' \ \frac{d_{l,k^m}(z) \times (z-(-q)^{2n+m-l+1-k})}{\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l-1+m+2s})} \times (z-(-q)^{k-l-m+1})$$

are contained in $\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$, by direct calculations. For (i)$'$, we have used the calculation

$$\frac{a_{l,k^m}(z)}{a_{1,k^m}((-q)^{1-l}z)a_{l-1,k^m}((-q)z)} = 1.$$

Then (i)$'$ and (ii)$'$ imply our assertion since

$$2n+m-l+1-k \neq k-l-1+m+2s \quad \text{and} \quad k-l-1+m+2s \neq k-l-m+1$$

for each $1 \le s \le l \le n-k$.
(b) We assume that $l > n-k$. By the homomorphisms,

$$\text{(iii)} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{1-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l-1})_{-q} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l}) \quad \text{and} \quad \text{(iv)} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l-1})_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{-q^{l-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l}),$$

we have

$$\text{(iii)}' \quad \frac{(z-(-q)^{m+l-1+k}) \times \prod_{s=1}^{n-k}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-1+2s})}{d_{l,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

$$\text{(iv)}' \quad \frac{(z-(-q)^{k-l+m+1}) \times \prod_{s=1}^{n-k}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-1+2s})}{d_{l,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Here we have used the following calculations:

$$\frac{a_{l,k^m}(z)}{a_{1,k^m}((-q)^{1-l}z)a_{l-1,k^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{a_{l,k^m}(z)}{a_{1,k^m}((-q)^{l-1}z)a_{l-1,k^m}((-q)^{-1}z)} = 1.$$

The only ambiguity that can occur by the above equations is at $l=1$, which would contradict our assumption that $l > n-k$. Finally, the homomorphism

$$\text{(v)} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-k})_{(-q)^{n+m-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

implies that we have

$$\frac{a_{l,k^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{l,k^m}(z)a_{l,(n-k)}((-q)^{-n-m+1}z)} = \frac{(z-(-q)^{m+k-l-1})}{(z-(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-1})}$$

and hence

$$\text{(v)}' \quad \frac{d_{l,k^m}(z)\prod_{s=1}^{n-k}(z-(-q)^{m+k+l-1+2s})}{\prod_{s=1}^{n-k}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-1+2s})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

which implies our assertion since

$$m+k+l-1+2s' \neq k-l+m-1+2s$$

for any $1 \leq s, s' \leq n-k < l$. ☐

Lemma 7.6. *For $1 \leq k, l \leq n-1$ and $m, p \geq 1$,*

$$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) \text{ divides } \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l,n-k,n-l)} \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1} (z-(-q)^{|k-l|+|p-m|+2(s+t)}).$$

Proof. We assume that $p < m$. Since $d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = d_{(n-l)^p,(n-k)^m}(z)$, we assume that $l \leq k$ without loss of generality. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q)^{1-p}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)d_{l,k^m}((-q)^{1-p}z)}{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By an induction on p, we have

$$d_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z) \text{ divides } \prod_{s=1}^{\min(l,n-k)} \prod_{t=0}^{p-2} (z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)}),$$

and we know

$$d_{l,k^m}((-q)^{1-p}z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(l,n-k)} \left(z-(-q)^{k-l+m+p-2+2s}\right).$$

Therefore, our assertion holds for this case. The remaining case can be proved in a similar way. ☐

Lemma 7.7. *Let $\mu_1 = \min(l,k,n-k,n-l)$. For $1 \leq k, l \leq n-1$, $\min(m,p) > 1$ and $|m-p| \geq \mu_1 - 1$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\mu_1} \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1} (z-(-q)^{|k-l|+|p-m|+2(s+t)}). \tag{7.9}$$

In particular, there is no ambiguity when $\mu_1 = 1$.

Proof. Since $d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = d_{(n-l)^p,(n-k)^m}(z)$, we assume that $l \leq k$ without loss of generality. Note that we can assume that $\min(p,m) = p$ since $d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = d_{k^m,l^p}(z)$.

(a) Now we assume that $l \leq n-k$ and $m-p \geq l-1$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-l})_{(-q)^{n+p-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)d_{(n-l),k^m}((-q)^{-n-p+1}z)}{d_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,k^m}(z)a_{(n-l),k^m}((-q)^{-n-p+1}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.10}$$

By the induction on p, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)d_{(n-l),k^m}((-q)^{-n-p+1}z)}{d_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z) \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z-(-q)^{2n-k-l+m+p-2+2s})}{\prod_{s=1}^{l} \prod_{t=0}^{p-2} (z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})}$$

and, by direct computation, we have

$$\frac{a_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,k^m}(z)a_{(n-l),k^m}((-q)^{-n-p+1}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{l} \frac{(z-(-q)^{k+l-m+p-2s})}{(z-(-q)^{k-l+m+p-2+2s})}.$$

Hence (7.10) can be re-written as follows:

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z) \times \displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{2n-k-l+m+p-2+2s})(z-(-q)^{k-l-m+p-2+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.11}$$

Note that

$$n-k+p-1 > s-s'+t \qquad \text{and} \qquad p-m < s-s'+t$$

since $-l < (s-s') < l \le n-k$, the assumption $m-p \ge \mu_1 - 1 = l-1$, and $0 \le t \le p-1$. Thus (7.11) implies that

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

which implies our assertion with Lemma 7.6.

(b) Now we assume that $l > n-k$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-l})_{(-q)^{n+p-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)d_{(n-l),k^m}((-q)^{-n-p+1}z)}{d_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,k^m}(z)a_{(n-l),k^m}((-q)^{-n-p+1}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.12}$$

By the induction on p, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)d_{(n-l),k^m}((-q)^{-n-p+1}z)}{d_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z) \times \displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n-k}(z-(-q)^{l+k+p+m-2+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n-k}\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})}$$

and, by direct computation, we have

$$\frac{a_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,k^m}(z)a_{(n-l),k^m}((-q)^{-n-p+1}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{n-k} \frac{(z-(-q)^{2n-k-l+p-m-2s})}{(z-(-q)^{k-l+m+p-2+2s})}.$$

Hence (7.12) can be re-written as follows:

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z) \times \displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n-k}(z-(-q)^{l+k+p+m-2+2s}) \times (z-(-q)^{2n-k-l+p-m-2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n-k}\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.13}$$

By writing $m = p + n - k + u$ for some $u \geq -1$, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z) \times \displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n-k} (z - (-q)^{l+2p+n+u-2+2s}) \times (z - (-q)^{2k-l-n-u-2+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n-k}\prod_{t=0}^{p-1} (z - (-q)^{-l+n+u+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}] \tag{7.14}$$

Since

- $l + 2p + n + u - 2 + 2s' \neq -l + n + u + 2(s + t) \iff l + p - 1 \neq s - s' + t$,
- $2k - l - n - u - 2 + 2s' \neq -l + n + u + 2(s + t) \iff k - n - u - 1 \neq s - s' + t$

for $1 \leq s, s' \leq n - k < l$, $u \geq -1$ and $0 \leq t \leq p - 1$, (7.13) is equivalent to

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n-k}\prod_{t=0}^{p-1} (z - (-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})},$$

which implies our assertion with Lemma 7.6. □

Proof of Theorem 6.5 *for type* $A_n^{(1)}$. Without loss of generality, assume $l \leq k$ and $p \leq m$. Also, by Lemma 7.7, it suffices to consider when $m - p < \min(k, l, n - k, n - l) - 1$. We also assume that $\ell \leq n - k$. Now we shall prove

$$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\mu_1}\prod_{t=0}^{p-1} (z - (-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})$$

without restriction, as we desired.

From the homomorphism in Theorem 5.12 with the restriction $\min(k, l) = 1$[3]

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-(k+1)}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big) \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(k+1)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,1^m}((-q)^{k+1}z)d_{l^p,k^m}(z)}{d_{l^p,(k+1)^m}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{l^p,(k+1)^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,1^m}((-q)^{k+1}z)a_{l^p,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By direct computation, we have

$$\frac{a_{l^p,(k+1)^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,1^m}((-q)^{k+1}z)a_{l^p,k^m}(z)} = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \frac{(z - (-q)^{l-k-m+p-2t-2})}{(z - (-q)^{l-k+m-p+2t})}.$$

Furthermore, by descending induction on k, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,1^m}((-q)^{k+1}z)d_{l^p,k^m}(z)}{d_{l^p,(k+1)^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z - (-q)^{l-k+m-p+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}\prod_{t=0}^{p-1} (z - (-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})},$$

[3] In this section, we would like to emphasize the restriction, which will be *removed* in the later section with the results in this section.

since we know $d_{l^p,(k+1)^m}(z)$ and $d_{l^p,1^m}(z)$ completely. Therefore, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)}{\prod_{s=1}^{l}\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})} \times \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{l-k-m+p-2t-2}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

We note that

$$k-l+m-p+2(s+t) \neq l-k-m+p-2t'-2$$

can never occur since $k \geq l$ and $m \geq p$ and $s \geq 1$ and $t, t' \geq 0$. Therefore, our assertion claim holds by Lemma 7.6. The remaining cases also hold by the similar argument. $\square$

Corollary 7.8. *For $m < n$, the KR modules $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_x$ and $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_x$ $(x \in \mathbf{k}^\times)$ are root modules.*

Definition 7.9. We call a KR module M is *plain* if $\mathfrak{d}(M, N) \leq 1$ for every KR module N in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$.

Corollary 7.10. *Let $x \in \mathbf{k}^\times$.*

(a) *For* any $m \geq 1$, *the KR module $M = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_x$ (resp. $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_x$) is plain.*

(b) *For any $1 \leq k < n$, the fundamental module $M = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_x$ is plain.*

Hence the composition length of $M \otimes N$ for any KR module N in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ is less than or equal to 2.

Remark 7.11. Combining Corollary 7.8 with the denominator formulas, we can construct other root modules that, in general, are not KR modules. For instance, the denominator formula

$$d^{A_4^{(1)}}_{1^4,2}(z) = d^{A_4^{(1)}}_{4^4,2}(z) = (z-q^6)$$

says that

$$\mathfrak{d}\big(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^4}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2})_{(-q)^6}\big) = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{d}\big(\mathscr{D}^{\pm k}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^4}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2})_{(-q)^6}\big) = 0 \quad (k > 0).$$

Thus $\big(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^4}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2})_{(-q)^6}\big)$ is a $\mathfrak{sl}_3$-pair. Hence $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^4}) \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2})_{(-q)^6}$ and $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{2})_{(-q)^6} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^4})$ are root modules by Lemma 2.21. Similar constructions are available for other types as well (see Lemmas 7.19, 7.53, and 7.70 below).

7.2. Proof for type $B_n^{(1)}$.

In this subsection, we first prove our assertion on $d_{k^m,l^p}(z)$ for $1 \leq k, l < n$, which we can apply the similar argument in Section 7.1. Then we will prove our assertion on $d_{l^m,n^p}(z)$ for $1 \leq l \leq n$. Recall that $q_n = q_\mathfrak{s}$ and $q_\mathfrak{s}^2 = q$.

7.2.1. *$d_{k^m,l^p}(z)$ for $1 \leq k, l < n$.* Recall that

$$\begin{aligned} d_{k,l}(z) &= \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} \big(z-(-q)^{|k-l|+2s}\big)\big(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l-1+2s}\big), \\ a_{k,l}(z) &\equiv \frac{[|k-l|]\,\langle 2n+k+l-1]\,\langle 2n-k-l-1]\,[4n-|k-l|-2]}{[k+l]\,\langle 2n+k-l-1]\,\langle 2n-k+l-1]\,[4n-k-l-2]}. \end{aligned} \tag{7.15}$$

Note also that we have surjective homomorphisms

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k-1})_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{k-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{1-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l-1})_{-q} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})$$

for all $1 < k, l < n$, as special cases in Theorem 3.15.

As Lemma 7.1, we prove the lemma below by using $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants in §2.2.

Lemma 7.12. *For $1 \leq k \leq n-1$, we have*

$$d_{1,k^2}(z) = (z-(-q)^{k+2})(z+(-q)^{2n-k+1}). \tag{7.16}$$

Proof. From (7.15), we know $d_{1,k}(z) = (z-(-q)^{k+1})(z+(-q)^{2n-k})$. Hence it is enough to show that

(a) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^k}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k-1}}) = 0$,
(b) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^{k+2}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+3}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+1}}) = 1$,
(c) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{-(-q)^{2n-k-1}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{-(-q)^{2n-k}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{-(-q)^{2n-k-2}}) = 0$,
(d) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{-(-q)^{2n-k+1}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{-(-q)^{2n-k+2}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{-(-q)^{2n-k}}) = 1$,

by Proposition 2.9. Note that

$$\operatorname{clr}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^s}) \neq \operatorname{clr}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{-(-q)^s}) = 2n-k$$

and we assume $\operatorname{clr}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^s}) = k$ and $\operatorname{clr}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{-(-q)^s}) = 2n-k$ for $s \in \mathbb{Z}$.

(a) Note that

$$\operatorname{rch}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})) = [0] \quad \text{and} \quad \operatorname{exrch}_1(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^k}) = [-4, 4k+4],$$

since $d_i = 2$ in (1.1) for $i < n$. Thus (3.8) implies (a). Similarly, (c) holds, since $\operatorname{clr}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{-(-q)^{2n-k-1}}) = 2n-k$.

(b) Note that the sequences

$$(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+1}}) \quad \text{and} \quad (\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}))$$

are normal, since

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+3}}) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+3}}, \mathscr{D}^{-1}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})) = 0,$$

respectively. Hence

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+3}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+1}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+3}}) + \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+1}}) = 1,$$

by Lemma 2.17 (v). By the same argument, (d) also holds. □

Lemma 7.13. *For any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$, we have*

$$d_{1,1^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{m+1})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-2}). \tag{7.17}$$

Proof. By fusion rule,

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})$$

we have

$$\frac{(z-(-q)^{m-1})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-4})(z-(-q)^{m+1})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-2})}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.18a}$$

$$\frac{(z-(-q)^{3-m})(z+(-q)^{2n-m})(z-(-q)^{m+1})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-2})}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.18b}$$

Then an ambiguity happens at $m = 2$ for $(-q)$ and $-(-q)^{2n-2}$ by comparing equations in (7.18). However, the ambiguity is already covered by Lemma 7.12.

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{-(-q)^{2n+m-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}},$$

yields

$$\frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{4n+m-3})(z+(-q)^{2n+m})}{(z-(-q)^{m+1})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-2})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.19}$$

by induction and direct computations. Then our assertion follows with (7.18) and (7.19). □

Lemma 7.14. *For any $1 < k < n$ and $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$, we have*

$$d_{k,1^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{k+m})(z+(-q)^{2n-k+m-1}).$$

Proof. By Dorey's rule in §3.3

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k-1})_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{k-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{1-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k-1})_{(-q)} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})$$

we have

$$\frac{(z-(-q)^{k+m})(z+(-q)^{2n-k+m+1})(z-(-q)^{-k-m+2})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-k-1})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.20a}$$

$$\frac{(z-(-q)^{m+k})(z+(-q)^{2n+m+k-3})(z-(-q)^{k-m-2})(z+(-q)^{2n-k+m-1})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.20b}$$

by the induction on m and direct computations. By (7.20), the ambiguity happens at $k=2$. In that case, (i) $(-q)^{-m}$ and (ii) $-(-q)^{2n+m-1}$ might be roots of $d_{k,1^m}(z)$. However, (i) Note that the fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})$$

induces

$$\frac{(z-(-q)^{m})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-5})(z-(-q)^{m+2})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-3})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$
$$\frac{(z-(-q)^{k+m})(z+(-q)^{2n-k+m-1})(z-(-q)^{4-m})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-1})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

by the induction hypothesis on m. Thus $(-q)^{-m}$ can not be a root of $d_{2,1^m}(z)$. (ii) Since

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{-(-q)^{2n+m-1}} \simeq \mathrm{hd}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{-(-q)^{2n+2m-2}} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{-(-q)^{2n}})$$

and

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{2}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{-(-q)^{2n+2s}}) = 0 \text{ for } 0 \le s \le m-1 \text{ as } d_{1,2}(z) = (z-(-q)^3)(z+(-q)^{2n-2}),$$

$-(-q)^{2n+m-1}$ can not be a root of $d_{2,1^m}(z)$ by Proposition 2.9, either.

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{-(-q)^{2n+m-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

we obtain

$$\frac{d_{k,1^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{4n+m-k-2})(z+(-q)^{2n+m+k-1})}{(z-(-q)^{m+k})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-k-1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.21}$$

by induction and direct computations. Thus our assertion follows from (7.20) and (7.21) □

Lemma 7.15. *For any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ and $1 \le k \le n-1$, we have*

$$d_{1,k^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{k+m})(z+(-q)^{2n-k+m-1}).$$

Proof. It is enough to consider when $k \ge 2$. By fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \text{ and } \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}),$$

we have

$$\frac{(z-(-q)^{k+m-2})(z+(-q)^{2n-k+m-3})(z-(-q)^{k+m})(z+(-q)^{2n-k+m-1})}{d_{1,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.22a}$$

$$\frac{(z-(-q)^{k-m+2})(z+(-q)^{2n-m-k+1})(z-(-q)^{k+m})(z+(-q)^{2n-k+m-1})}{d_{1,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.22b}$$

Then an ambiguity happens at $m = 2$ for $(-q)^k$ and $-(-q)^{2n-k-1}$ by comparing equations in (7.22). However, such ambiguity does not happen by Lemma 7.12.

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{-(-q)^{2n+m-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}},$$

yields

$$\frac{d_{1,k^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{4n+m-k-2})(z+(-q)^{2n+m+k-1})}{(z-(-q)^{m+k})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-k-1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.23}$$

by induction and direct computations. Hence our assertion follows from (7.22) and (7.23). □

Proposition 7.16. *For any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$ and $1 \leq k, l \leq n-1$, we have*

$$d_{l,k^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z-(-q)^{|k-l|+m-1+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-2+2s}). \tag{7.24}$$

Proof. (a) Let us assume first that $l \leq k$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l-1})_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{l-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l}),$$

we have

$$\frac{\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-1+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-2+2s})}{d_{l,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.25}$$

Here we have used

$$\frac{a_{l,k^m}(z)}{a_{l-1,k^m}((-q)^{-1}z)a_{1,k^m}((-q)^{l-1}z)} = 1.$$

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{-(-q)^{2n+m-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l,k^m}(z)d_{l,k}(-(-q)^{-2n-m+2}z)}{d_{l,k^{m-1}}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{l,k^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{l,k^m}(z)a_{l,k}(-(-q)^{-2n-m+2}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Note that

$$\frac{d_{l,k^m}(z)d_{l,k}(-(-q)^{-2n-m+2}z)}{d_{l,k^{m-1}}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{l,k^m}(z) \times \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{4n+m-k-l-3+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n+m+k-l-2+2s})}{\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-3+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-4+2s})}$$

and

$$\frac{a_{l,k^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{l,k^m}(z)a_{l,k}(-(-q)^{-2n-m+2}z)} = \frac{(z-(-q)^{m+k-l-1})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-k-l+2})}{(z-(-q)^{m+k+l-1})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-k+l-2})}$$

by direct calculation. Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{l,k^m}(z)\times\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{4n+m-k-l-3+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n+m+k-l-2+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-1+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-2+2s})}\in\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]\tag{7.26}$$

which implies our assertion with (7.25), since

$4n+m-k-l-3+2s'\neq k-l+m-1+2s$ and $2n+m+k-l-2+2s'\neq 2n-k-l+m-2+2s$

for $1\le s,s'\le l\le k$.

(b) Now we assume that $l>k$. From the homomorphisms in Theorem 5.12 (5.10a) with the restriction $\min(k,l)=1$

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-k+1}}\otimes\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(k-1)^m}\big)_{(-q)}\twoheadrightarrow\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l,1^m}((-q)^{-k+1}z)d_{l,(k-1)^m}((-q)z)}{d_{l,k^m}(z)}\times\frac{a_{l,k^m}(z)}{a_{l,1^m}((-q)^{-k+1}z)a_{l,(k-1)^m}((-q)z)}.$$

By the induction hypothesis on k and the direct calculation, we have

$$\frac{d_{l,1^m}((-q)^{-k+1}z)d_{l,(k-1)^m}((-q)z)}{d_{l,k^m}(z)}=\frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{k}(z-(-q)^{l-k+m-1+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-2+2s})}{d_{l,k^m}(z)},\tag{7.27}$$

and

$$\frac{a_{l,k^m}(z)}{a_{l,1^m}((-q)^{-k+1}z)a_{l,(k-1)^m}((-q)z)}=1.$$

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^m}\big)\otimes\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k}\big)_{-(-q)^{2n+m-2}}\twoheadrightarrow\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l,k^m}(z)d_{l,k}(-(-q)^{-2n-m+2}z)}{d_{l,k^{m-1}}((-q)z)}\times\frac{a_{l,k^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{l,k^m}(z)a_{l,k}(-(-q)^{-2n-m+2}z)}\in\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

Note that

$$\frac{d_{l,k^m}(z)d_{l,k}(-(-q)^{-2n-m+2}z)}{d_{l,k^{m-1}}((-q)z)}=\frac{d_{l,k^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{k}(z-(-q)^{4n+m-k-l-3+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n+m+l-k-2+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{k}(z-(-q)^{l-k+m-3+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-4+2s})}$$

and

$$=\frac{(z-(-q)^{m-k+l-1})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-2-k-l})}{(z-(-q)^{m+k+l-1})(z+(-q)^{2n+m-l+k-2})},$$

by direct calculations. Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{l,k^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{k}(z-(-q)^{4n+m-k-l-3+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n+m+l-k-2+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{k}(z-(-q)^{l-k+m-1+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-2+2s})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.28}$$

Thus we have the assertion with (7.27) and (7.28), since

$4n+m-k-l-3+2s' \neq l-k+m-1+2s$ and $2n+m+l-k-2+2s' \neq 2n-k-l+m-2+2s$

for $1 \le s, s' \le k < l$. □

Lemma 7.17. *For $1 \le k, l \le n-1$ and $m, p \ge 1$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) \ \textit{divides} \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)}(z-(-q)^{|k-l|+|m-p|+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+|m-p|-1+2(s+t)}).$$

Proof. Since $d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = d_{k^m,l^p}(z)$, we assume that $l \le k$ without loss of generality. We assume that $\min(p, m) = p$. By fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q)^{1-p}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)d_{l,k^m}((-q)^{1-p}z)}{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By induction hypothesis,

$$d_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z) \text{ divides } \prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})$$

and we know

$$d_{l,k^m}((-q)^{1-p}z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m+p-2+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m+p-3+2s}).$$

A direct computation using induction on p shows that our assertion holds for this case. The other case can be proved in a similar way. □

With the previous statements and the analogous proofs, we have the analog of Lemma 7.7.

Lemma 7.18. *For $1 \le k, l \le n-1$ and $|m-p| \ge \min(k,l)-1$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)}(z-(-q)^{|k-l|+|m-p|+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+|m-p|-1+2(s+t)}) \tag{7.29}$$

In particular, there is no ambiguity when $\min(k,l) = 1$.

Proof. Since $d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = d_{k^m,l^p}(z)$, we assume that $l \le k$ without loss of generality. We assume that $\min(p, m) = p$ and $m - p \ge l$. The homomorphism

$$V(l^p) \otimes V(l)_{-(-q)^{2n+p-2}} \twoheadrightarrow V(l^{p-1})_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

tells that we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)d_{l,k^m}(-(-q)^{-2n-p+2}z)}{d_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{4n+p-k-l+m-4+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n+p+k-l+m-3+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})}$$

by the induction on p,

$$\frac{a_{l^{p-1},k^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,k^m}(z)a_{l,k^m}(-(-q)^{-2n-p+2}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{l}\frac{(z-(-q)^{p+k+l-m-2s})(z+(-q)^{2n+p-k+l-m-1-2s})}{(z-(-q)^{p+k-l+m-2+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n+p-k-l+m-3+2s})}$$

and hence

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{4n+p-k-l+m-4+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n+p+k-l+m-3+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})} \times\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{p+k+l-m-2s})(z+(-q)^{2n+p-k+l-m-1-2s}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

Since[4]

$$\begin{aligned} &4n+p-k-l+m-4+2s' = k-l+m-p+2(s+t) \text{ and}\\ &2n+p+k-l+m-3+2s' \neq 2n-k-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)\end{aligned} \tag{7.30}$$

for $1\le s,s'\le l\le k$ and $0\le t\le p-1$, the above equation can be refined as follows:

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)\times\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{p+k+l-m-2s})(z+(-q)^{2n+p-k+l-m-1-2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]. \tag{7.31}$$

By writing $m=p+l+u$ for some $u\ge -1$, (7.31) can be re-written as follows:

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)\times\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-u-2s})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-u-1-2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k+u+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k+u-1+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

Note that

$$k-u-2s' \neq k+u+2(s+t) \text{ and } 2n-k-u-1-2s' \neq 2n-k+u-1+2(s+t)$$

for $(s-s')<l$, $u\ge -1$ and $t\le p-1$. Thus (7.31) is equivalent to

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}],$$

[4]Hereafter, we frequently skip the computation like (7.30)

which implies our assertion with Proposition 7.17. The remained case ($\min(m,p) = m$) can be proved in a similar way. $\square$

Proof of Theorem 6.5 *for* $\max(l,k) < n$ *in type* $B_n^{(1)}$. Without loss of generality, we assume that $p \le m$ and $m - p < \min(k,l) - 1$. We also assume $l \le k$.

From the homomorphism in Theorem 5.12 (5.10a) with the restriction $\min(k,l) = 1$, we obtain

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^p})_{-(-q)^{2n-l}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^p})_{(-q)}.$$

From the above homomorphism, we obtain

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)d_{1^p,k^m}(-(-q)^{2n-l}z)}{d_{(l-1)^p,k^m}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{(l-1)^p,k^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,k^m}(z)a_{1^p,k^m}(-(-q)^{2n-l}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By direct computation,

$$\frac{a_{(l-1)^p,k^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,k^m}(z)a_{1^p,k^m}(-(-q)^{2n-l}z)} = \prod_{t=1}^{p-1} \frac{(z-(-q)^{-k+l-m+p-2-2t})(z+(-q)^{-2n+k+l-m+p-1-2t})}{(z-(-q)^{l-k+m-p+2t})(z+(-q)^{-2n+k+l+m-p+1+2t})}.$$

Furthermore, by the induction on l, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)d_{1^p,k^m}(-(-q)^{2n-l}z)}{d_{(l-1)^p,k^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{-k+l+m-p+2t})(z+(-q)^{-2n+k+l+m-p+1+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})}.$$

Therefore, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{-k+l+m-p+2t})(z+(-q)^{-2n+k+l+m-p+1+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})} \\
&\qquad\times \prod_{t=1}^{p-1} \frac{(z-(-q)^{-k+l-m+p-2-2t})(z+(-q)^{-2n+k+l-m+p-1-2t})}{(z-(-q)^{l-k+m-p+2t})(z+(-q)^{-2n+k+l+m-p+1+2t})} \\
&= \frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=1}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{-k+l-m+p-2-2t})(z+(-q)^{-2n+k+l-m+p-1-2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.32}$$

On the other hand, fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{-m-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q)^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)d_{l^p,k}((-q)^{-m-1}z)}{d_{l^p,k^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m+p+2s})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m+p+2s-1})}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+(m-p)+2(s+t)+2})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+(m-p)+2(s+t)+1})}$$

$$= \frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z)}{\prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+(m-p)+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+(m-p)+2(s+t)-1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.33}$$

which follows from the descending induction on $m-p$.

Then, unless $t=0$ and $s=l$, our assertion holds by comparing (7.32) and (7.33) since

$$k+l+m-p+2t \neq k-l+m-p+2s, \quad \text{and} \quad 2n-k-l+m-p+2s-1 = 2n-k+l+m-p+2t-1.$$

Thus it suffices to prove that the factor at $t=0$ and $s=l$ appears in $d_{l^p,k^m}(z)$ as many times as we want.

As we did, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{-(-q)^{2n+p-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

yields

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^m}(z) \times \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{p+k+l-m-2s})(z+(-q)^{2n+p-k+l-m-1-2s})}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})(z+(-q)^{2n-k-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.34}$$

which guarantees that the factor at $t=0$ and $s=l$ appears in $d_{l^p,k^m}(z)$ as many times as we want. Thus the assertion for this case is completed.

The remaining cases can be proved in a similar way. □

Corollary 7.19. *Let $x \in \mathbf{k}^\times$.*

(a) *For $m \le n$, the KR module $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_x$ is a root module.*

(b) *For* any *$m \ge 1$, the KR module $M = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_x$ $(x \in \mathbf{k}^\times)$ is plain.*

(c) *For any $1 \le k \le n$, the fundamental module $M = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_x$ is plain.*

Hence the composition length of $M \otimes N$ for any KR module N in $\mathscr{C}_\mathfrak{g}$ is less than or equal to 2.

7.2.2. *$d_{l^m,n^p}(z)$ for $1 \le l < n$.* Note that

$$d_{n,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l}\left(z-(-1)^{n+l}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l-1+4s}\right) \quad a_{n,l}(z) \equiv \frac{{}_s[2n-2l-1]_{(n+k)}\,{}_s[6n+2l-3]_{(n+k)}}{{}_s[2n+2l-1]_{(n+k)}\,{}_s[6n-2l-3]_{(n+k)}}, \tag{7.35}$$

Recall that we have surjective homomorphisms

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n+2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}), \tag{7.36}$$

as a special case in (3.12a).

Lemma 7.20. *For $m \ge 1$, we have*

$$d_{1,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(2,m)-1}(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+|2-m|+2t}),$$

Proof. We first prove our assertion for $m=2$. By the homomorphisms obtained from (3.12b)

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{4n-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{(z-(-1)^{n+2}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n})(z-(-1)^{n+2}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2})}{d_{1,n^2}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$
$$\frac{d_{1,n^2}(z)(z-(-1)^{n+2}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{6n})}{(z-(-1)^{n+2}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n})} \times \frac{(z-(-1)^{n+2}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2})}{(z-(-1)^{n+2}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

which implies our assertion for $m=2$.

Now let us assume that $m \geq 3$. By fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \text{ and } \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})$$

we have

$$\frac{(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m-4})(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m-2})(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m})}{d_{1,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.37a}$$

$$\frac{(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-m})(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m-2})(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m})}{d_{1,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.37b}$$

By equations in (7.37), the ambiguity happens at $m=2$ which we already cover.

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+m-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}}.$$

implies that we have

$$\frac{d_{1,n^m}(z)(z-(-1)^{n+m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{6n+m-2})}{(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m-2})(z-(-1)^{n+m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+m})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.38}$$

which implies our assertion for $m \geq 3$ with (7.37) and (7.38). □

Lemma 7.21. *We have*

$$d_{1^2,n}(z) = (z-(-1)^n(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+3})$$

Proof. Note that $d_{1,n}(z) = \big(z-(-1)^{n+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+1}\big)$. By Proposition 2.9, it suffices to consider

(a) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^{n+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^{n+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-3}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-1}})$.

(b) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^{n+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+5}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^{n+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+1}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+3}})$.

(a) Note that

$$\mathrm{exrch}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-1}}) = [-8, 4n] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}))[0].$$

Thus $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-1}}) = 0$.

(b) Since

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^{n+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+5}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^{n+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+5}}) = 0,$$

Lemma 2.12 (ii) implies $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+3}}) = 1$ as we desired. □

Lemma 7.22. *For $m \geq 1$, we have*

$$d_{1^m,n}(z) = (z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2m-1})$$

Proof. Since the cases when $m<3$ is already covered, let us assume that $m\ge 3$. By fusion rule,

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)}\otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big) \quad\text{ and }\quad \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}}\otimes V(1^{m-1})_{(-q)^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow V(1^m)$$

we have

$$\frac{(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2m-5})(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2m-1})}{d_{1^m,n}(z)}\in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}],$$
$$\frac{(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2m+3})(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2m-1})}{d_{1^m,n}(z)}\in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}],$$

whose ambiguity do not happen for $m\ge 3$.

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)\otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{-(-q)^{2n+m-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{1^m,n}(z)(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n-2m+1})}{(z-(-1)^{n+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2m-1})}\in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}],$$

which implies the assertion. □

Lemma 7.23. *For $m\ge 1$ and $1\le l\le n-1$, we have*

$$d_{l,n^m}(z)=\prod_{t=0}^{\min(2,m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+1+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+|2-m|+4s+2t}).$$

Proof. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-1}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}}\otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{l-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l}\big),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l-1,n^m}((-q)^{-1}z)d_{1,n^m}((-q)^{l-1}z)}{d_{l,n^m}(z)}\equiv \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+1+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+m-4+4s+2t})}{d_{l,n^m}(z)}\in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

Next, by the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l}\big)\otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{-(-q)^{2n+l-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-1}\big)_{(-q)},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l,n^m}(z)d_{1,n^m}(-(-q)^{-2n-l+2}z)}{d_{l-1,n^m}((-q)z)}\times\frac{a_{l-1,n^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l,n^m}(z)a_{1,n^m}(-(-q)^{-2n-l+2}z)}\in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

Let us focus on $m=2$ first. By an induction hypothesis on l, we have

$$\frac{d_{l,n^2}(z)\times\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{1}(z-(-1)^{n+1+l}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{6n+2l-4+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-1)^{n+l+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+4s+2t})}\times\frac{(z-(-1)^{n+1+l}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2l-4})}{(z-(-1)^{n+1+l}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2l-2})}\in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]$$

by direct computations. Thus it suffices to prove that $(-1)^{n+1+l}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2l-4}$ and $(-1)^{n+1+l}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2l}$ are factors of $d_{l,n^2}(z)$.

Note that there exists a homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^2}\big)\otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-1)^nq_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-1}\big)_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2}}.$$

obtained from (7.36). Then we have

$$\frac{d_{l,n^2}(z) \times (z-(-1)^{n+l} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{6n-2l}) \times (z-(-1)^{n+l+1} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l-2})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+1+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+4s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

which completes the assertion for $m=2$.

Now we assume that $m \geq 3$. Note that we have a homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+m-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}}.$$

Then we have

$$\frac{d_{l,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+m+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{6n-2l+m-4+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+1+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+m-4+4s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

which yields our assertion since

$$6n-2l+m-4+4s' \neq 2n-2l+m-4+4s+2t \iff 2n \neq 2(s-s')+t$$

for $1 \leq s, s' < n$ and $t \in \{0,1\}$. ◻

Lemma 7.24. *For $1 \leq l \leq n-1$ and $p > 1$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,n^2}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2p-4+4s})(z-(-1)^{n+l+p}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2p-2+4s}).$$

Proof. By (7.36)

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n+2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}),$$
$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}),$$

we have

$$\frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p}q^{2n-2l+2p-4+4s})(z-(-1)^{n+l+p}q^{2n-2l+2p-2+4s})}{d_{l^p,n^2}(z)} \times (z-(-1)^{l+p+n}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l-2p-2})(z-(-1)^{l+p+n}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{6n-2l+2p-4}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.39}$$

and

$$\frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{l+p+n}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l+2p-4+4s)})(z-(-1)^{l+p+n}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l+2p-2+4s)})}{d_{l^p,n^2}(z)} \times (z-(-1)^{l+p+n}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n+2l-2p+2})(z-(-1)^{l+p+n}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2l+2p}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.40}$$

as in the previous cases.

By (7.39) and (7.40), we have an ambiguity happens at $l=n-1$. In that case, (i) Since

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^p})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+2p-2}} = \mathrm{hd}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{6n+2p-4}} \otimes \cdots \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n}})$$

and

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+4r}}) = 0 \quad \text{ for } r \geq 0 \text{ as } d_{l,n^2}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{n-1}(z-(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+2t}),$$

$(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+2p-2}$ can not be a root by Proposition 2.9. (ii) Since the universal formula arising from $(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2p}$ doe not vanish, $(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2p}$ can not be a root by the universal coefficient formula in Proposition 6.2.

From the homomorphism,

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2},$$

we obtain

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^2}(z)(z-(-1)^{l+p+n}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l-2p})(z-(-1)^{l+p+n}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{6n-2l+2p-2})}{\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{l+p+n}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l+2p-4+4s})(z-(-1)^{l+p+n}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l+2p-2+4s})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

as in the previous cases. Since

$$\{6n-2l+2p-2, 2n-2l-2p\} \cap \{2n-2l+2p-4+4s, 2n-2l+2p-2+4s \mid 1 \leq s \leq l\} = \emptyset,$$

our assertion follows from (7.39) and (7.40). □

Lemma 7.25. *For $1 \leq l \leq n-1$ and $p > 1$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,n}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2p-3+4s})$$

Proof. From the homomorphism in Theorem 5.12 (5.10a) with the restriction $\min(k,l)=1$

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^p})_{(-q)^{-l+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^p})_{(-q)} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}),$$

we have

$$\frac{\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2p-3+4s})}{d_{l^p,n}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

since $\dfrac{a_{l^p,n}(z)}{a_{(l-1)^p,n}((-q)z)a_{1^p,n}((-q)^{-l+1}z)} = 1.$

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^p})_{-(-q)^{2n-l}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^p})_{(-q)}$$

yields

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n}(z)\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{6n-2p-2l+3+4s})}{\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2p-3+4s})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Note that

$$6n-2p-2l+3+4s' \neq 2n-2l+2p-3+4s \iff 2n-2p-2l-2(s'-s) \neq -3$$

for $1 \leq s, s' \leq l$, which implies the assertion. □

Lemma 7.26. *For $1 \le l \le n-1$ and $m,p \ge 1$,*

$$d_{l^p,n^m}(z) \text{ divides } \prod_{t=0}^{\min(2p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z-(-1)^{n+l+p+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+|2p-m|+4s+2t}).$$

Proof. We assume that $\min(2p,m)=m$. By fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)d_{l^p,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-m}z)}{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By the induction, we have

$$d_{l^p,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z) \text{ divides } \prod_{t=0}^{m-2} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z-(-1)^{n+l+p+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+2p-m+4s+2t}),$$

and we know

$$d_{l^p,n}((-q)^{1-m}z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2p+m-4+4s}).$$

Thus our assertion holds for this case. The remaining case can be proved in a similar way. □

Lemma 7.27. *For $1 \le l \le n-1$, $\min(m,p) \ge 2$ and $2p-m \ge 2(l+1)$ or $m-2p \ge (l-1)$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(2p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z-(-1)^{n+l+p+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+|2p-m|+4s+2t}). \tag{7.41}$$

Proof. (a) Let us assume that $2p-m \ge l+2$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+m-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{l^p,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-m+3}z)}{d_{l^p,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} \times \frac{a_{l^p,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{l^p,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-m+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Note that

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{l^p,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-m+3}z)}{d_{l^p,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z) \times \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{6n-2l+2p+m-6+4s})}{\prod_{t=0}^{m-2}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+2p-m+4s+2t})}$$

by the induction on m, and the direct computation yields

$$\frac{a_{l^p,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{l^p,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-m+3}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{l} \frac{(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2l-2p+m-4s})}{(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l+2p+m-4+4s})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z) \times \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{6n-2l+2p+m-6+4s})(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l-2p+4+m+4s})}{\prod_{t=0}^{m-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+2p-m+4s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

where $d = n + l + p + m$. Note that

$$\begin{aligned} & 6n - 2l + 2p + m - 6 + 4s' \neq 2n - 2l - 2 + 2p - m + 4s + 2t, \\ \iff & 2n + m - 2 \neq 2(s - s') + t \end{aligned}$$

for $1 \le s, s' \le l$ and $0 \le t \le m - 1$. Thus the above equation tells that

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z) \times \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z - (-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l-2p+4+m+4s})}{\prod_{t=0}^{m-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z - (-1)^d (q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+2p-m+4s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.42}$$

Thus we see that there is no cancellation

$$2n - 2l - 2p + 4 + m + 4s \neq 2n - 2l - 2 + 2p - m + 4s' + 2t' \iff 2(s - s') - t' \neq u - 3$$

for $1 \le s, s' \le l$. Hence our assertion follows with Lemma 7.26.
(b) Let us assume that $2p < m$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{-(-q)^{2n+p-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z) d_{l,n^m}(-(-q)^{-2n-p+2}z)}{d_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z) d_{l,n^m}(-(-q)^{-2n-p+2}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Note that

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z) d_{l,n}(-(-q)^{-2n-p+2}z)}{d_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z) \prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z - (-1)^{n+l+p+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{6n-2l+2p+2+m-2+4s+2t})}{\prod_{t=0}^{2p-3}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z - (-1)^{n+l+p+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+m-2p+4s+2t})}$$

by the induction on p, and ($d = m + n + l + p$) the direct computation yields

$$\frac{a_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z) d_{l,n^m}(-(-q)^{-2n-p+2}z)} = \prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l} \frac{(z - (-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2l+2p-m-4s-2t})}{(z - (-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l+m+2p-6+4s+2t})}$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z) \prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z - (-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{6n-2l+2p+2+m-2+4s+2t})}{\prod_{t=0}^{2p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z - (-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l-2+m-2p+4s+2t})} \times \prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z - (-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2l+2p-m-4s-2t}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Since

$$\begin{aligned} & 6n - 2l + 2p + 2 + m - 2 + 4s' + 2t' \neq 2n - 2l - 2 + m - 2p + 4s + 2t \\ \iff & 2n + 2p \neq -1 + 2(s - s') + (t - t') \end{aligned}$$

for $1 \le s, s' \le l$, $0 \le t' \le 1$ and $0 \le t \le 2p-1$, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2l+2p-m-4s-2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{2p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l-2+m-2p+4s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

Then our assertion under the assumption follows with Lemma 7.26: Namely, we have ($u := m-2p \ge 2(l-1)$)

$$\begin{aligned} & 2n+2l+2p-m-4s'-2t' \neq 2n-2l-2+m-2p+4s+2t \\ \iff & 2l-2(s+s')-(t'+t) \neq u-1. \end{aligned}$$

for $1 \le s, s' \le l$, $0 \le t' \le 1$ and $0 \le t \le 2p-1$. □

Proposition 7.28. *For $1 \le l \le n-1$ and $m, p \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,n^{2m}}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(2p,2m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p}q^{n-l+|p-m|+2s+t-1}).$$

Proof. We first assume that $p \le m$. From the homomorphism obtained from Theorem 5.12 (5.10b) with the restriction $\min(k,l)=1$

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{2m}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-1)^{n+m-1}q^n} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m})_{(-1)^{1+m}q},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^{2m}}(z)d_{l^p,1^m}((-1)^{n+m-1}q^n z)}{d_{l^p,(n-1)^m}((-1)^{1+m}q)} \times \frac{a_{l^p,(n-1)^m}((-1)^{1+m}q)}{a_{l^p,n^{2m}}(z)a_{l^p,1^m}((-1)^{n+m-1}q^n z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

By direct computation, we have (set $d = l+n+p$)

$$\frac{a_{l^p,(n-1)^m}((-1)^{1+m}q)}{a_{l^p,n^{2m}}(z)a_{l^p,1^m}((-1)^{n+m-1}q^n z)} = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\frac{(z-(-1)^d q^{l-n-1-m+p-2t})}{(z-(-1)^d q^{l-n+m-p+1+2t})}$$

and

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^{2m}}(z)d_{l^p,1^m}((-1)^{n+m-1}q^n z)}{d_{l^p,(n-1)^m}((-1)^{1+m}q)} = \frac{d_{l^p,n^{2m}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-1)^d q^{l-n+1+m-p+2t})(z-(-1)^d q^{n-l+m-p+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q^{n-2-l+m-p+2(s+t)})(z-(-1)^d q^{n-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})}$$

Then we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^{2m}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-1)^d q^{l-n-1-m+p-2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\left(\prod_{s=2}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q^{n-2-l+m-p+2(s+t)})\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q^{n-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})\right)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d_{l^p,n^{2m}}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\left(\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-1)^d q^{n-l+m-p+2(s+t)})\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q^{n-l+m-p-1+2(s+t)})\right)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}],$$

which is equivalent to

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^{2m}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-1)^d q^{n+l+m-p+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{2p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q^{n-l+m-p+2s+t-1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.43}$$

On the other hand, fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^2}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2m-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m+2}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2}},$$

implies that

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^{2m}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p}q^{n-l+p+m+2s-1})(z-(-1)^{n+l+p}q^{n-l+p+m+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{2p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q^{n-l+m-p+2s+t+1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

$$\iff \frac{d_{l^p,n^{2m}}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=2}^{2p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q^{n-l+m-p+2s+t-1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.44}$$

which follows from the descending induction on $|2m-p|$. Then our assertion holds by comparing (7.43) and (7.44) as

$$n+l+m-p+2t \neq n-l+m-p+2s-1, n-l+m-p+2s'$$

for $0 \le t \le 2p-1$ and $1 \le s, s' \le l$, unless $t=0, s'=l$. Then by the universal coefficient formula, our assertion follows. The remaining cases can be proved in a similar way. $\square$

Proof of Theorem 6.5 *for $1 \le l < n = k$ in type $B_n^{(1)}$.* It suffices to show that when m is odd. Thus shall consider only $d_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)$ and hence we have to prove that

$$d_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(2p,2m+1)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+|2p-2m-1|+4s+2t-2}).$$

Assume first that $2p \le 2m+1$. By considering fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m+1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2m-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m+2}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}},$$

first, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=1}^{2p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2m-2p+4s+2t-1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.45}$$

Thus we can obtain

$$d_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}(z) = \prod_{t=1}^{2p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2m-2p+4s+2t-1})$$
$$\times \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+l+p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2m-2p+4s-1})^{\epsilon_s},$$

for $\epsilon_s \in \{0,1\}$. By classical T-system

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m+1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m+1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m+1}}\big)_{(-1)^m} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m}}\big)_{(-1)^{m+1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}z)d_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{d_{l^p,(n-1)^{m+1}}((-1)^m z)d_{l^p,(n-1)^m}((-1)^{m+1}z)} \times \frac{a_{l^p,(n-1)^{m+1}}((-1)^m z)a_{l^p,(n-1)^m}((-1)^{m+1}z)}{a_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)a_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Since

$$\frac{a_{l^p,(n-1)^{m+1}}((-1)^m z)a_{l^p,(n-1)^m}((-1)^{m+1}z)}{a_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)a_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} = 1,$$

we have ($d := n+l+p+1$)

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{d_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}z)d_{l^p,n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{d_{l^p,(n-1)^{m+1}}((-1)^m z)d_{l^p,(n-1)^m}((-1)^{m+1}z)} \\
&= \prod_{t=1}^{2p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2m-2p+4s+2t}) \times \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2m-2p+4s})^{\epsilon_s} \\
&\times \prod_{t=1}^{2p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2m-2p+4s+2t-2}) \times \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l+2m-2p+4s-2})^{\epsilon_s} \\
&\times \frac{1}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l+2m+2-2p+4(s+t)})(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+4-2l+2m-2p+4(s+t)})} \\
&\times \frac{1}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l+2m-2-2p+4(s+t)})(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n-2l+2m-2p+4(s+t)})}
\end{aligned}$$

which implies $\epsilon_s = 1$ for all $1 \le s \le l$.

The remaining cases can be proved in a similar way. □

7.2.3. $d_{n^m,n^p}(z)$. Recall

$$d_{n,n}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n}\big(z-(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s-2}\big), \quad a_{n,n}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n}\frac{{}_{\mathfrak{s}}[4n+4s-4]_{(0)}\,{}_{\mathfrak{s}}[4n-4s]_{(0)}}{{}_{\mathfrak{s}}[4s-2]_{(0)}\,{}_{\mathfrak{s}}[8n-4s-2]_{(0)}}. \tag{7.46}$$

The following lemma can be easily proved by using homomorphisms

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n+2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-1}\big)_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^2}\big) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^2}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-1}\big)_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2}.$$

Lemma 7.29. *For any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$, we have*

$$d_{n,n^2}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s-1}).$$

Lemma 7.30. *For any $p \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 2}$, we have*

$$d_{n^p,n^2}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+p-4})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+p-2}).$$

Proof. By the homomorphisms

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n+2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-1)^n q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2},$$

the induction hypothesis says that we have

$$\frac{\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{p-4+4s})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{p-2+4s})}{d_{n^p,n^2}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^2}(z)(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+p})}{\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{p+4s-4})\prod_{s=1}^{n-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{p+4s-2})} \times (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-p})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-p+2}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

respectively. Note that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^p})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{p+4n-2}} &\simeq \operatorname{hd}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2p+4n-3}} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n-1}}) \\ &\simeq \operatorname{hd}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{p-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{p+4n-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n-1}}).\end{aligned}$$

Then

(i) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^s\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{p-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{p+4n-1}}) = 0$ $(s = 0, -1)$ by Proposition 2.9,

(ii) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n-1}}) = 1$,

as $d_{n,n^2}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s-1})$. Hence

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^p})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{p+4n-2}}) = 1$$

by Proposition 2.12 (ii), which completes the assertion. □

Lemma 7.31. *For any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 3}$, we have*

$$d_{n,n^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+m-3}).$$

Proof. By fusion rules

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{n,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)d_{n,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-m}z)}{d_{n,n^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+m-5}) \times \prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+m-3})}{d_{n,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

$$\frac{d_{n,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m-1}z)d_{n,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}z)}{d_{n,n^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s-m-1}) \times \prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+m-3})}{d_{n,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Note there are double roots in the numerator only at $m \equiv_2 0$.

On the other hand, the fusion homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-2}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^2} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}),$$

implies that we have

$$\frac{d_{n^{m-2},n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^2z)d_{n^2,n}(-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2-m}z)}{d_{n^m,n}(z)} = \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+m-7})\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+m-3})}{d_{n^m,n}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

and note there are double roots in the numerator only at $m \equiv_2 1$. Therefore, every root in $d_{n,n^m}(z) = d_{n^m,n}(z)$ can appear with multiplicity at most 1. Finally, by the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+m-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}}$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{n,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+m-5+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m-3+4s})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

and thus our assertion follows. □

As Lemma 7.6, we have the following:

Lemma 7.32. *For $1 \le k,l \le n-1$ and $m,p \ge 1$, we have*

$$d_{n^p,n^m}(z) \ \textit{divides} \ \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+2t-2+|p-m|}).$$

Lemma 7.33. *For any $|m-p| \ge 2n-2$, we have*

$$d_{n^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+2t-2+|p-m|}).$$

Proof. Without loss of generality, we can assume that $2 \le p \le m$. Then our assertion can be re-written as follows:

$$d_{n^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+2t-2+m-p}).$$

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+p-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{p-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}}$$

and descending induction on $m-p$, we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-p+3}z)}{d_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} \times \frac{a_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-p+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By descending induction on $m-p$, we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-p+3}z)}{d_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} = \frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+4s+m+p-6})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+2t-2+m-p})}$$

and, the direct computation yields

$$\frac{a_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-p+3}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{n} \frac{(z-(-1)^{m-p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{p-m-4+4s})}{(z-(-1)^{m-p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{p+m-4+4s})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+m+p-6+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m-p-2+4s+2t})} \times \prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-m+p-4+4s}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Since $4n+m+p-6+4s' \neq m-p-2+4s+2t$, the above equation can be written as

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-m+p-4+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m-p-2+4s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Since $-m+p-4+4s' \neq m-p-2+4s+2t$ under our assumption, our claim follows with Lemma 7.32. $\square$

Proposition 7.34. *For $m, p \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$, we have*

$$d_{n^p,n^{2m}}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,2m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|p-2m|+4s+2t-2})$$

Proof. We assume that $2 \leq p \leq 2m$. From the homomorphism obtained from Theorem 5.12 (5.10b) with the restriction $\min(k,l)=1$

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{(-1)^{n+m-1}q^n} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-1)^{1+m}q},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^{2m}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+2m-p+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2p-2m-2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2m-p-2+4s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d_{n^p,n^{2m}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+2m-p+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2m-p-2+4s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.47}$$

which guarantees that $\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2m-p-2+4s})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2m-p-2+4s+2})$ appears in $d_{n^p,n^{2m}}(z)$ as many as we want.

On the other hand, fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^2}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2m-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m+2}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2}},$$

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^{2m}}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=2}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2m-2-p+4s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.48}$$

Here we apply descending induction on $2m-p$. Thus our assertion follows from (7.47) and (7.48).

The other case is proved in a similar way. □

Proof of Theorem 6.5 *for* $l=k=n$ *in type* $B_n^{(1)}$. It suffices to prove that both of m and p are odd; i.e., we have to prove that

$$d_{n^p,n^{2m+1}}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,2m+1)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|2m+1-p|+4s+2t-2}),$$

when p is also odd. Let us assume that $p \le 2m+1$. From fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{2m+1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2m-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{2m+2}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}},$$

we obtain

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2m-p+4s+2t-1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.49}$$

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{p}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+p-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{p-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}}$$

implies that

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)d_{n,n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-p+3}z)}{d_{n^{p-1},n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} \times \frac{a_{n^{p-1},n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{a_{n^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)a_{n,n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-p+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By direct computation, we have

$$\frac{a_{n^{p-1},n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{a_{n^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)a_{n,n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-p+3}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{n}\frac{(z-(-1)^{p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n-2m+p-1-4s})}{(z-(-1)^{p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2m+p-3+4s})}$$

and

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)d_{n,n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-4n-p+3}z)}{d_{n^{p-1},n^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} = \frac{d_{n^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+4s+2m+p-5})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2m-p+4s+2t-1})},$$

which follows from the descending induction. Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+4s+2m+p-5})(z-(-1)^{p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n-2m+p-1-4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2m-p+4s+2t-1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d_{n^p,n^{2m+1}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^{p+1}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n-2m+p-1-4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2m-p+4s+2t-1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.50}$$

Thus our assertion hold for odd p, since $2m-p+4s'-1 \neq 4n-2m+p-1-4s$ by comparing (7.49) and (7.50). □

7.3. **Proof for type $C_n^{(1)}$.** In this subsection, we first prove our assertion on $d_{k^m,n^p}(z)$ for $1 \le k < n$ and on $d_{n^m,n^p}(z)$. Then we will prove our assertion on $d_{k^m,l^p}(z)$ for $1 \le k,l < n$, by applying the similar argument in Section 7.1.

Recall, for $1 \le k,l \le n$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} d_{k,l}(z) &= \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l,n-k,n-l)} (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|k-l|+2s}) \prod_{i=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k-l+2s}), \\ a_{k,l}(z) &\equiv \frac{{}_s[|k-l|]\,{}_s[2n+2-k-l]\,{}_s[2n+2+k+l]\,{}_s[4n+4-|k-l|]}{{}_s[k+l]\,{}_s[2n+2-k+l]\,{}_s[2n+2+k-l]\,{}_s[4n+4-k-l]}, \end{aligned} \tag{7.51}$$

Note also that we have surjective homomorphisms

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k-1})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l-1})_{-q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})$$

for all $1 < k,l \le n$, as Dorey's rule in Theorem 3.15, and surjective homomorphisms

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-n+k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+1-k}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})$$

given in (3.12b) for $1 \le k < n$.

7.3.1. *$d_{l^m,n^p}(z)$ for $1 \le l < n$.* As Lemma 7.12, we can prove the following lemma:

Lemma 7.35. *We have $d_{1,n^2}(z) = (z+(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+5})$.*

Proof. By (7.51), we have $d_{1,n}(z) = \big(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+3}\big)$. Hence it is enough to consider

$$\text{(i)}\quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2})_{-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+5}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+3}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+7}})$$

$$\text{(ii)}\quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2})_{-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+1}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n-1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+3}})$$

(i) Note that the sequences of root modules

$$(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+7}}) \quad \text{and} \quad (\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+7}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}))$$

are normal, since $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+7}}) = 0$ and $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+7}}) = 0$, respectively. Hence Lemma 2.17 (b) (v) says that

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+3}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+7}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+3}}) + \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+7}}) = 1.$$

(ii) Note that

$$\mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})) = [0] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{exrch}_1(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+1}}) = [-2, 2n+4].$$

Hence Theorem 3.12 implies

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2})_{-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+1}}) = 0,$$

which completes our assertion. □

With Lemma 7.35, we can prove the following lemma.

Lemma 7.36. *For $m \geq 1$ and $1 \leq l < n$, we have*

$$d_{l,n^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-1)^{(n+m+l+1)} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+2m+2s}).$$

Lemma 7.37. *For $p \geq 1$ and $1 \leq l < n$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,n}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,2)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-1)^{(n+p+l+1)} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+|2-p|+2s+2t}). \tag{7.52}$$

Proof. Our assertion is known for $p = 1$. Therefore, we assume $p \geq 2$. By fusion rule,

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^2}),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z) d_{l,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}z)}{d_{l^2,n}(z)} = \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-1)^{n+l} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+2s+2t}).}{d_{l^2,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})}$$

implies that we have

$$\frac{d_{l^2,n}(z)(z - (-1)^{n+l} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+1})(z - (-1)^{n+l} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{3n-l+7})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-1)^{n+l} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+1+2s})(z - (-1)^{n+l} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+3+2s})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

which implies our assertion when $p = 2$. For $p \geq 3$, we can apply the similar argument. $\square$

As Lemma 7.6 and Lemma 7.17, we have the following analogous statement by splitting it into the cases when $p \leq 2m$ and $p > 2m$.

Lemma 7.38. *For $m, p \geq 1$ and $1 \leq l < n$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,n^m}(z) \text{ divides } \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,2m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-1)^{n+p+l+m} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+|2m-p|+2s+2t}).$$

Proof. (a) Let us assume that $p \leq 2m$. By fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-p}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z) d_{l,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-p}z)}{d_{l^p,n^m}} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By induction,

$$d_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z) \text{ divides } \prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-1)^{n+p+l+m} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+2m-p+2s+2t})$$

and we know

$$d_{l,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-p}z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-1)^{n+m+l+1} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+2m+p-1+2s}).$$

Thus our assertion follows. The remaining case can be proved in a similar way. $\square$

Lemma 7.39. *For $m,p \geq 1$ with $|2m-p| \geq l-1$ and $1 \leq l < n$, set $d = n+p+l+m$. Then we have*

$$d_{l^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,2m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+|2m-p|+2s+2t}).$$

Proof. Note that we have proved when $\min(m,p)=1$. Thus we will consider when $\min(m,p)>1$.
(a) Let us assume that $p \leq 2m$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+p+1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{l,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n-p-1}z)}{d_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} \times \frac{a_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{l,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n-p-1}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By the induction on p, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{l,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n-p-1}z)}{d_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{3n-l+2m+p+1+2s})}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+2m-p+2s+2t})}$$

and, direct computation yields

$$\frac{a_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{l,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n-p-1}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{l}\frac{(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+p-1-2m+2s})}{(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+p-1+2m+2s})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{3n-l+2m+p+1+2s})}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+2m-p+2s+2t})} \times \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+p-1-2m+2s}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Since

$$3n-l+2m+p+1+2s' \neq n+1-l+2m-p+2s+2t \iff 2n+2p \neq 2(s-s')+2t$$

for $1 \leq s,s' \leq l$ and $0 \leq t \leq p-1$, the above implies

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+p-1-2m+2s})}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+2m-p+1+2s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.53}$$

which proves our assertion under the assumption with Lemma 7.38, since ($u := 2m-p \geq l-1$)

$$n-l-1-u+2s' \neq n-l+u+1+2s+2t \iff 2(s'-s)-2t \neq 2u+2$$

for $1 \leq s,s' \leq l$ and $0 \leq t \leq p-1$.
(b) Assume that $2m < p$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-1)^{1-m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-1}},$$

we have by the induction on m

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{l^p,n}((-1)^{1-m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n-2m}z)}{d_{l^p,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)z)} \times \frac{a_{l^p,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{l^p,n}((-1)^{1-m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n-2m}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By the descending induction on $p-2m$, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{l^p,n}((-1)^{1-m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n-2m}z)}{d_{l^p,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+p+l+m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{3n+1-l+p+2m-2+2s+2t})}{\prod_{t=0}^{2m-3}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^{n+p+l+m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+p-2m+2s+2t})}$$

and the direct computation yields

$$\frac{a_{l^p,n^{m-1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{l^p,n}((-1)^{1-m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n-2m}z)} = \prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}\frac{(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+l-p+2m+1-2s-2t})}{(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+p+2m-3+2s+2t})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{3n+1-l+p+2m-2+2s+2t})}{\prod_{t=0}^{2m-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+p-2m+2s+2t})} \times \prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+l-p+2m+1-2s-2t}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Since

$$\begin{aligned} &3n+1-l+p+2m-2+2s+2t \neq n+1-l+p-2m+2s'+2t' \\ \iff &2n+4m \neq 2(s'-s)+2(t'-t)+2 \end{aligned}$$

for $1 \le s, s' \le l$, $0 \le t' \le 2m-1$ and $0 \le t \le p-1$, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+l-p+2m+1-2s-2t})}{\prod_{t=0}^{2m-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+p-2m+2s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.54}$$

which implies our assertion under our assumption with Lemma 7.38, since $(u := p-2m \ge l-1)$

$$n+l-p+2m+1-2s-2t \neq n+1-l+p-2m+2s'+2t' \iff 2l-2(s+s')-2(t+t') \neq 2u,$$

for $1 \le s, s' \le l$, $0 \le t \le 1$ and $0 \le t' \le 2m-1$. □

Proof of Theorem 6.5 *for* $1 \le l < n = k$ *in type* $C_n^{(1)}$. We first assume that $p \le 2m$. From the homomorphism in obtained from Theorem 5.12 (5.10a) with the restriction $\min(k,l) = 1$

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^p}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^p}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-l+3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^p}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})},$$

we obtain

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{1^p,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-l+3}z)}{d_{(l-1)^p,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} \times \frac{a_{(l-1)^p,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{1^p,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-l+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By direct computation, (set $d = n+p+l+m$)

$$\frac{a_{(l-1)^p,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{1^p,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-l+3}z)} = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\frac{(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-n+l-2m+p-3-2t})}{(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{l-n+2m-p-1+2t})}.$$

Furthermore, by an induction on l, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{1^p,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-l+3}z)}{d_{(l-1)^p,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-n+2m-p+l-1+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+2m-p+2s+2t})}$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-n+l-2m+p-3-2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+2m-p+2s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+2m-p+2s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.55}$$

by induction on l. Here we use

$$-n+l-2m+p-3-2t' \neq n+1-l+2m-p+2s+2t \iff l \neq n+2+(2m-p)+s+(t+t')$$

for $1 \le s \le l-1$ and $0 \le t,t' \le p-1$.

On the other hand, fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-m-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-1}}$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=2}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+2m-p+1+2s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.56}$$

which follows from the descending induction on $2m-p$. Then we have

$$n-l+2m-p+1+2s+2t' \neq n+1+l+2m-p+2t \quad \text{for } 0 \le t' \le 1,\ 1 \le s \le l,\ 0 \le t \le p-1,$$

unless $(t',t,s) = (0,0,l)$, $(1,0,l-1)$ or $(1,1,l)$ when we compare (7.55) and (7.56). Similarly,

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{m+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)}$$

yields

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n-l+p-2m-3+2s+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-l+2m-p+2s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

which completes our assertion for this case,

The remaining case is proved similarly. □

7.3.2. $d_{n^p,n^m}(z)$.

Lemma 7.40. *For $m \geq 1$, we have*

$$d_{n,n^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n}(z - (-1)^{m+1} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+|2m-2|+2s}).$$

Proof. The case for $m = 1$ is already known. Thus, we assume $m \geq 2$.

By Dorey's rule in Theorem 3.15,

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-n}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-1}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{1,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-n}z)d_{n-1,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{d_{n,n^m}(z)} = \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z - (-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m+2s})}{d_{n,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Next the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n-1}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})}$$

implies that we have

$$\frac{d_{n,n^m}(z)(z - (-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2m+4})(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2-2m})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z - (-1)^{m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+2m+2s})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Hence our claim follows. ∎

Following the proof of, e.g., Lemma 7.6, we have the following analogous statement.

Lemma 7.41. *For $m, p \geq 1$, we have*

$$d_{n^p,n^m}(z) \text{ divides } \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z - (-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+|2m-2p|+2s+4t}).$$

Lemma 7.42. *For $|m - p| \geq \lceil n/2 \rceil$, we have*

$$d_{n^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z - (-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+|2m-2p|+2s+4t}).$$

Proof. Without loss of generality, we assume that $p \leq m$. The case when $\min(m,p) = 1$ was proven above, hence let us consider when $\min(m,p) \geq 2$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^p}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-1)^{1-m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2p}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{p-1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n,n^m}((-1)^{1-m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n-2p}z)}{d_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^2z)} \times \frac{a_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^2z)}{a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n,n^m}((-1)^{1-m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n-2p}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By descending induction on $m - p$, we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n,n^m}((-1)^{1-m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n-2p}z)}{d_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)z)} = \frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z - (-1)^{d}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2m+2p+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z - (-1)^{d}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+2m-2p+2s+4t})}$$

and the direct computation yields

$$\frac{a_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)z)}{a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n,n^m}((-1)^{1-m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n-2p}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{n} \frac{(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2m+2p-2+2s})}{(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m+2p-2+2s})}$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2m+2p+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+2m-2p+2s+4t})} \times \prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2m+2p-2+2s}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

which implies

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2m+2p-2+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^d q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+2m-2p+2s+4t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Here we used

$$2n+2m+2p+2s' \neq 2+2m-2p+2s+4t \iff n+2p-1 \neq (s-s')+2t$$

for $1 \le s \le n$ and $0 \le t \le p-1$. Thus our assertion under the assumption follows, since

$$-2m+2p-2+2s' \neq 2+2m-2p+2s+4t \iff (s'-s)-2t \neq 2+2u \quad (u := m-p \ge \lceil n/2 \rceil)$$

for $1 \le s, s' \le n$ and $0 \le t \le p-1$. $\square$

Proof of Theorem 6.5 *for $l = k = n$ in type $C_n^{(1)}$.* We assume without loss of generality that $p \le m$. From the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-m-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-1}}$$

and the descending induction on $|m-p|$, we obtain

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n^p,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-m-1}z)}{d_{n^p,n^{m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-1}z)} \times \frac{a_{n^p,n^{m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-1}z)}{a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n^p,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-m-1}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By direct computation, we have

$$\frac{a_{n^p,n^{m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-1}z)}{a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n^p,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-m-1}z)} = 1$$

and

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n^p,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-m-1}z)}{d_{n^p,n^{m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2)^{-1}z)} = \frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^{p+m}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2p+2m+2+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m+6-2p+2s+4t})}$$

$$= \frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m+2-2p+2s+4t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Thus we conclude

$$d_{n^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+2m-2p+2s+4t}) \times \prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+2m-2p+2s})^{\epsilon_s}$$

for some $\epsilon_s \in \{0,1\}$.

From the homomorphism obtained from Theorem 5.12 (5.10d) *without* the restriction on l

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{2m}})_{(-1)^{-n-m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-n-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2}},$$

we have

$$\dfrac{d_{n^p,1^{2m}}((-1)^{-n-m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-n-2}z)d_{n^p,n^m}(z)}{d_{n^p,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2}z)} \times \dfrac{a_{n^p,n^m}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2}z)}{a_{n^p,1^{2m}}((-1)^{-n-m+1}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-n-2}z)a_{n^p,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

By direct calculation, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\dfrac{\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+2m-2p+2s})^{\epsilon_s}}{\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{4+2m-2p+2s})^{\epsilon_s}} \times \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2m-2p+6+4t})(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2p-2m-4t}) \\
&\qquad\qquad \times \dfrac{(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2m-2p+4})}{(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m-2p+4})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}] \\
&\Rightarrow \dfrac{\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2+2m-2p+2s})^{\epsilon_s}}{\prod_{s=1}^{n}(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{4+2m-2p+2s})^{\epsilon_s}} \times \dfrac{(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2n+2m-2p+4})}{(z-(-1)^{m+p}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2m-2p+4})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].
\end{aligned}$$

Thus ϵ_1 must be 1 and hence $\epsilon_k = 1$ for all $1 \le s \le n$, which implies our assertion. □

7.3.3. *$d_{k^m,l^p}(z)$ for $1 \le k, l < n$.*

Lemma 7.43. *For $m \ge 1$, we have*

$$d_{1,1^m}(z) = (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m+1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m+1}).$$

Proof. By fusion rules

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m}),$$

we have by induction on m

$$\begin{aligned}
&\dfrac{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m-1})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m-1}) \times (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m+1})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m+1})}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}], \\
&\dfrac{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-m+3})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-m+3}) \times (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m+1})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m+1})}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, there is an ambiguity when at $m = 2$ or $m = n+2$. For the case of $m = 2$, the surjective morphism (3.12b)

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2}),$$

which resolves the ambiguity since

$$\dfrac{d_{1,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n}z)d_{1,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n}z)}{d_{1,k^2}(z)} = \dfrac{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+3})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{3})}{d_{1,k^2}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

For the case of $m = n+2$, fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^n} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{n+2}})$$

resolves the ambiguity since it implies

$$\frac{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{3-n})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+3}) \times (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+3})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{3n+3})}{d_{1,1^{n+2}}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m+1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}}$$

implies that we have

$$\frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m+3})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+m+3})}{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m+1})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m+1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

from which our assertion follows. $\square$

With Lemma 7.43, one can check the following lemma.

Lemma 7.44. *For $1 \le k \le n-1$ and $m \ge 1$, we have*

$$d_{k,1^m} = (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m+k})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m-k+2}).$$

Lemma 7.45. *For $1 \le k \le n-1$ and $m \ge 1$, we have*

$$d_{1,k^m} = (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m+k})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m-k+2}).$$

Proof. By fusion rules

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}),$$

we have

$$\frac{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m+k-2})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m-k})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m+k})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m-k+2})}{d_{1,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.57a}$$

$$\frac{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2+k-m})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-m-k+4})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m+k})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m-k+2})}{d_{1,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.57b}$$

By (7.57a) and (7.57b), there is an ambiguity when $m = 2$. In the case of $m = 2$, the surjective morphism (3.12b)

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n+k-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n-k+1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})$$

implies

$$\frac{d_{1,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-n+k-1}z)d_{1,n}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n-k+1}z)}{d_{1,k^2}(z)} = \frac{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k+4})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k+2})}{d_{1,k^2}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

resolving the ambiguity. Now we consider $m \ge 3$, and by the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m+1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}},$$

our insertion follows since we have

$$\frac{d_{1,k^m}(z)(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m+2+k})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+m-k+4})}{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{m+k})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+m-k+2})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \qquad \square$$

As Proposition 7.16, we can obtain the following proposition.

Proposition 7.46. *For any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 2}$ and $1 \leq k, l < n$, we have*

$$d_{l,k^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|k-l|+m-1+2s})(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k-l+m+1+2s}) \tag{7.58}$$

As Lemma 7.6 and Lemma 7.17, we have the following analogous statement.

Lemma 7.47. *For $1 \leq k, l \leq n-1$ and $\max(m,p) > 1$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) \text{ divides } \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|k-l|+|m-p|+2s+2t})(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k-l+|m-p|+2s+2t}).$$

Proposition 7.48. *For any $m, p \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$ with $\max(m,p) \geq 2$, $1 \leq k, l < n$ and*

$$|m-p| \geq \mu := \max(n - \max(k,l), \min(k,l) - 1),$$

we have

$$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|k-l|+|m-p|+2s+2t})(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k-l+|m-p|+2s+2t}).$$

Proposition 7.49 (Theorem 6.5 for $\max(l,k) < n$, and $m \equiv_2 0$ or $p \equiv_2 0$)**.** *For $k, l < n$ and $m, p \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$, we have*

$$d_{k^{2m},l^p}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(2m,p)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|k-l|+|2m-p|+2s+2t})(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k-l+|2m-p|+2s+2t})$$

Proof of Theorem 6.5 *for* $\max(l,k) < n$*, and* $m \equiv_2 0$ *or* $p \equiv_2 0$ *in type* $C_n^{(1)}$. Recall that we have a homomorphism in (5.10d)

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-1)^{-n-m+k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-1-n+k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-1)^{n+m-k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-k}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{2m}}),$$

which yields the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{2m}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-1)^{-n-m+k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1+k}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-1)^{n+m-k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-k}}$$

by duality. Then we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m}}(z) d_{l^p,n^m}((-1)^{-n-m+k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1+k}z)}{d_{l^p,n^m}((-1)^{n+m-k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-k}z)} \times \frac{a_{l^p,n^m}((-1)^{n+m-k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-k}z)}{a_{l^p,k^{2m}}(z) a_{l^p,n^m}((-1)^{-n-m+k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1+k}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

We assume that $l \leq k$ and $p \leq 2m$. By a direct calculation, we have

$$\frac{a_{l^p,n^m}((-1)^{n+m-k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-k}z)}{a_{l^p,k^{2m}}(z) a_{l^p,n^m}((-1)^{-n-m+k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1+k}z)} = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} \frac{(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l-k-2m+p-2s-2t})}{(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-l-k+2m-p+2s+2t})}$$

and

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m}}(z) d_{l^p,n^m}((-1)^{-n-m+k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1+k}z)}{d_{l^p,n^m}((-1)^{n+m-k}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{n+1-k}z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m}}(z) \displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-l-k+2m-p+2s+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-l+k+2m-p+2s+2t})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m}}(z)\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-l-k+2m-p+2s+2t})}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-l+k+2m-p+2s+2t})}\times\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}\frac{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l-k-2m+p-2s-2t})}{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-l-k+2m-p+2s+2t})}$$

$$=\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m}}(z)\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l-k-2m+p-2s-2t})}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-l+k+2m-p+2s+2t})}\in\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]$$

$$\Rightarrow\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m}}(z)}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-l+k+2m-p+2s+2t})}\in\mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]. \tag{7.59}$$

Then our assertion for this case follows from Lemma 7.47. The remaining cases can be proved in a similar way. $\square$

Lemma 7.50. *For $\mathfrak{g}=C_n^{(1)}$, $k,l<n$, we have*

$$\begin{aligned}&\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}),\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-|k-l|+|m-p|+2t}})\\&\quad=\begin{cases}\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}),\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-|k-l|+|m-p|+1+2t}}) & \text{if } m\ge p,\\ \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}},\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-|k-l|+|m-p|+2t}}) & \text{if } m<p,\end{cases}\end{aligned}$$

for $0\le t\le \min(m,p)-1$.

Proof. We set $\max(k,l)=a$ and $\min(k,l)=b$.
(i) We first assume $m\ge p$. Note that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+3-a+b+m-p+2t}}\simeq\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+3-a+b+2m-p+2t}}\nabla\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-a+b+m-p+2t}}$$

and

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}),\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+3-a+b+2m-p+2t}})=\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n-2}},\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+3-a+b+2m-p+2t}})=0$$

by

$$d_{k,l^p}(z)=\prod_{s=1}^{b}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a-b+p-1+2s})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-a-b+p+1+2s}).$$

Namely,
(a) $2n+3-a+b+2m-p+2t\ne a-b+p-1+2s \iff (n-a)+2+(m-p)+(b-s)>0\ge -t$,
(b) $2n+3-a+b+2m-p+2t\ne 2n-a-b+p+1+2s \iff 2+(m-p)+(b-s)>0\ge -t$,
(c) $4n+5-a+b+2m-p+2t\ne a-b+p-1+2s \iff n+3+(n-a)+(m-p)+(b-s)>0\ge -t$,
(d) $4n+5-a+b+2m-p+2t\ne 2n-a-b+p+1+2s \iff n+2+(m-p)+(b-s)>0\ge -t$,
for $1\le s\le b$ and $0\le t\le p-1$. Thus we have the assertion by Lemma 2.12 (ii).
(ii) Now let us assume that $m<p$. Note that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}}\simeq\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p})\nabla\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-p}}.$$

and

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-a+b+p-m+2t}},\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-p}})=\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4n+4-a+b+p-m+2t}},\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-p}})=0$$

by

$$d_{l,k^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a-b+m-1+2s})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-a-b+m+1+2s}).$$

Namely,

(a) $2n+3-a+b+2p-m+2t \neq a-b+m-1+2s \iff (n-a)+2+(p-m)+(b-s) > 0 \geq -t$,
(b) $2n+3-a+b+2p-m+2t \neq 2n-a-b+m+1+2s \iff 2+(p-m)+(b-s) > 0 \geq -t$,
(c) $4n+5-a+b+2p-m+2t \neq a-b+m-1+2s \iff n+3+(n-a)+(p-m)+(b-s) > 0 \geq -t$,
(d) $4n+5-a+b+2p-m+2t \neq 2n-a-b+m+1+2s \iff n+2+(p-m)+(b-s) > 0 \geq -t$,

for $1 \leq s \leq b$ and $0 \leq t \leq m-1$. Thus we have the assertion by Lemma 2.12 (i). □

Lemma 7.51. *For $\mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}$, $k, l < n$ and $m, p \in 2\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}+1$ we assume that*

$$\min(k,l) = 1.$$

Then

(1) *we have*

$$\begin{aligned}&\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|k-l|+|m-p|+2}}) \\ &\qquad = \begin{cases} \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|k-l|+p-m+3}}) & \text{if } m < p, \\ \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{|k-l|+m-p+2}}) & \text{if } m \geq p, \end{cases}\end{aligned}$$

(2) *we have*

$$\begin{aligned}&\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2+|k-l|+|m-p|+2}}) \\ &\qquad = \begin{cases} \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2+|k-l|+p-m+3}}) & \text{if } m < p, \\ \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2+|k-l|+m-p+2}}) & \text{if } m \geq p. \end{cases}\end{aligned}$$

Proof. We set $a := \max(k,l)$.
(1-i) We first assume $m < p$. Note that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+p-m+2}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+p+2}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+p-m+1}}$$

and

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+p+2}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n-2}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+p+2}}) = 0$$

by

$$d_{k,l^p}(z) = (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+p})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-a+p+2}).$$

Namely,

$$\begin{aligned} &a+p+2 \neq a+p, && a+p+2 \neq 2n-a+p+2 \iff n-a \neq 0, \\ &2n+2+a+p+2 \neq a+p, && 2n+a+p+4 \neq 2n+2-a+p \iff a+1 \neq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have the assertion by Lemma 2.12 (ii);
(1-ii) Now let us assume that $m \geq p$. Note that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-p}}.$$

Since

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+m-p+1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-p}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+a+m-p+3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-p}}) = 0$$

$$d_{l,k^m}(z) = (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+m})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-a+m+2s}),$$

as in the previous case, we have the assertion by Lemma 2.12 (i).

(2-i) We first assume $m < p$. Note that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+p-m+2n+4}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+p+2n+4}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+p-m+2n+3}}$$

and

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+4+a+p}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n-2}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+p+2n+4}}) = 0$$

by

$$d_{k,l^p}(z) = (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+p})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-a+p+2}).$$

Namely,

$$\begin{aligned} &a+p+2n+4 \neq a+p, && a+p+2n+4 \neq 2n+2-a+p \iff a+1 \neq 0,\\ &4n+6+a+p \neq a+p, && 4n+6+a+p \neq 2n+2-a+p \iff n+a+2 \neq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have the assertion by Lemma 2.12 (ii);

(2-ii) Now let us assume that $m \geq p$. Note that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-p}}.$$

Since

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+m-p+2n+3}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-p}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+a+m-p+2n+5}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-p}}) = 0$$

$$d_{l,k^m}(z) = (z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a+m})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-a+m+2s}),$$

as in the previous case, we have the assertion by Lemma 2.12 (i). $\square$

Proof of Theorem 6.5 *for* (i) $k \neq l < n$ *or* (ii) $\min(k,l) = 1$ *in type* $C_n^{(1)}$. Since the case when $\min(p,m) = 1$ is already covered, let us assume $\min(p,m) > 1$. Also the case when $\min(k,l) = 1$ is covered by Proposition (7.48) and hence we shall assume $\min(k,l) > 1$. By the previous proof, it suffices to show that when m, p are odd. Thus we shall consider only $d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)$ when p is odd. Note that we have to prove that $d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)$ coincides with

$$D_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z) := \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2m+1-p+2s+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k-l+2m+1-p+2s+2t}). \tag{7.60}$$

We assume further that $k \geq l$ and $2m+1 \geq p$.

From fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{2m+1}}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2m-2}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{2m+2}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}},$$

we obtain

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)d_{l^p,k}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2m-2}z)}{d_{l^p,k^{2m+2}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}z)} \times \frac{a_{l^p,k^{2m+2}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}z)}{a_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)a_{l^p,k}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2m-2}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By direct computation, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)d_{l^p,k}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2m-2}z)}{d_{l^p,k^{2m+2}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}z)}$$

$$= \frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z) \displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+p+2m+1+2s})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+3-k-l+p+2m+2s+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2m+3-p+2s+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k-l+2m+5-p+2s+2t})}$$

$$= \frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2m+1-p+2s+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k-l+2m+3-p+2s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

by applying the denominator formulas $d_{l^p,k^{2m+2}}(z)$ and $d_{l,k^{2m+1}}(z)$. Hence Lemma 7.47 implies that

$$\begin{aligned} d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z) &= \prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2m-p+1+2s+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k-l+2m-p+3+2s+2t}) \\ &\quad\times \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2m-p+1+2s})^{\epsilon_s}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k-l+2m-p+3+2s})^{\epsilon'_s} \end{aligned} \tag{7.61}$$

for $\epsilon_s, \epsilon'_s \in \{0,1\}$ for $1 \le s \le l$

By Lemma 7.51,

$$\text{we have no ambiguity when } l=1\text{; i.e } \epsilon_1 = \epsilon'_1 = 1. \tag{7.62}$$

From the homomorphism obtained from Theorem 5.12 (5.10a) with the restriction $\min(k,l)=1$

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^p})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-l+3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^p})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})},$$

we obtain

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)d_{1^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-l+3}z)}{d_{(l-1)^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} \times \frac{a_{(l-1)^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{a_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)a_{1^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-l+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By direct calculation, we have

$$\frac{a_{(l-1)^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)}{a_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)a_{1^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-l+3}z)} = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\frac{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l-k-2m+p-3-2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n+k+l-2m+p-5-2t})}{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l-k+2m-p+1+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n+k+l+2m-p-1+2t})}$$

and the induction on l from (7.62) implies

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)d_{1^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-l+3}z)}{d_{(l-1)^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)} \\ &= \frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n+k+l+2m-p-1+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-k+l+2m-p+1+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2m-p+1+2s+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k-l+2m-p+3+2s+2t})} \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n+k+l+2m-p-1+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-k+l+2m-p+1+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2m-p+1+2s+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k-l+2m-p+3+2s+2t})}$$

$$\times \prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \frac{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l-k-2m+p-3-2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n+k+l-2m+p-5-2t})}{(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l-k+2m-p+1+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n+k+l+2m-p-1+2t})}$$

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l-k-2m+p-3-2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-2n+k+l-2m+p-5-2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2m-p+1+2s+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k-l+2m-p+3+2s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2m-p+1+2s+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k-l+2m-p+3+2s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Hence Lemma 7.47 implies that

$$\begin{aligned} d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z) &= \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2m-p+1+2s+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k-l+2m-p+3+2s+2t}) \\ &\quad\times \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k+l+2m-p+1+2t})^{\epsilon_t}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k+l+2m-p+3+2s+2t})^{\epsilon'_t} \end{aligned} \tag{7.63}$$

for $\epsilon_t, \epsilon'_t \in \{0,1\}$ for $1 \le t \le p-1$

From (7.63), we need to show

$$\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k+l+2m-p+1+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k+l+2m+1-p+2t}) \text{ appears in } d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z) \tag{7.64}$$
with the same multiplicities of $D_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)$ in (7.60).

By Lemma 7.50 and Proposition 7.49, (7.64) for $\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k+l+2m+1-p})$ follows. Namely, we have

$$\begin{aligned} d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}(z) &= \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2m-p+1+2s+2t})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k-l+2m-p+3+2s+2t}) \\ &\quad\times \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k+l+2m-p+1+2t})^{\epsilon_t}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-k+l+2m-p+3+2s+2t}) \end{aligned} \tag{7.65}$$

for $\epsilon_t \in \{0,1\}$ for $0 \le t \le p-1$.

Now we assume further $k > l$. Note that $l < n-1$ by the assumption and hence we have $n > k > l$. Then the T-system ($p = 2p'+1$)

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{2p'+1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{2p'+1}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l+1)^{2p'+1}}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-1)^{2p'+1}}\big)$$

and (7.65) yield

$$\frac{d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)d_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}z)}{d_{(l+1)^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)d_{(l-1)^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)}$$

$$= \frac{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k+l+2m-p+2+2t})^{\epsilon_t} \times \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k+l+2m-p+2t})^{\epsilon_t}}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k+l+2m-p+2+2t})^{\epsilon_t}\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k+l+2m-p+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

by induction hypothesis on l since

$$\frac{a_{(l+1)^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)a_{(l-1)^p,k^{2m+1}}(z)}{a_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})z)a_{l^p,k^{2m+1}}((-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}z)} = 1. \tag{7.66}$$

Then we can conclude that $\epsilon_t = 1$ for all $0 \le t \le p-1$, as we desired.

The remaining cases can be proved in a similar way. □

Remark 7.52.

(a) In the proof of the above theorem, (7.66) does not hold when $k = l$. Thus it is not easy to remove the ambiguity.

(b) As we can see in (7.65), we only do not know the multiplicities of those roots of $d_{k^p,k^m}(z)$ for $m, p \in 2\mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}+1$. Hence we can determine whether $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_x \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p})_y$ is simple or not completely (see Section A below for comparison between the conjectural formulas and (7.65)).

(c) In Section A, we discuss an auxiliary technique that resolves the ambiguities in multiplicities.

Corollary 7.53. *For $m \le n$, the KR module $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_x$ $(x \in \mathbf{k}^\times)$ is a root module.*

7.4. **Proof for type $D_n^{(1)}$.** In this subsection, we first prove our assertion on $d_{n'^m,n^p}(z)$ for $n' \in \{n-1, n\}$ and on $d_{k^m,n'^p}(z)$. Then we will prove our assertion on $d_{k^m,l^p}(z)$ for $1 \le k, l < n-1$, by applying the similar argument in Section 7.1.

7.4.1. *$d_{n^p,n^m}(z)$ and $d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)$.* Here we will prove our assertion on $d_{n^p,n^m}(z)$ and $d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)$. We assume that n is even for this case. When n is odd, we can prove in the similar way. Note that $i^* = i$, and recall that

$$d_{n,n-1}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor \frac{n-1}{2} \rfloor} (z-(-q)^{4s}), \quad d_{n,n}(z) = d_{n-1,n-1}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor}(z-(-q)^{4s-2}),$$

$$a_{n,n-1}(z) \equiv \frac{\prod_{s=1}^{n-1}[4s-2]}{[2n-2]\prod_{s=1}^{n-2}[4s]}, \quad a_{n,n}(z) = a_{n-1,n-1}(z) \equiv \frac{\prod_{s=0}^{n-1}[4s]}{[2n-2]\prod_{s=1}^{n-1}[4s-2]}.$$

Also, by Theorem 3.15 (3.12), we have the following: For $1 \le l \le n-2$ and $n', n'' \in \{n, n-1\}$ such that $n' - n'' \equiv n - l \pmod 2$, there exist surjective homomorphisms

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n'})_{(-q)^{-n+l+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n''})_{(-q)^{n-l-1}} \to \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l}) \text{ and } \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q)^{-n+l+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-l-1})_{(-q)^{l}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}),$$

which can be obtained from Theorem 3.15 and (3.12c), respectively.

Lemma 7.54. *For $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$, we have*

$$d_{n,n^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-3}) \quad \text{and} \quad d_{n-1,n^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor \frac{n-1}{2} \rfloor}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-1}).$$

Proof. (a-1) For simplicity, write $n' = \dfrac{n}{2}$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{n,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)d_{n,n}((-q)^{1-m}z)}{d_{n,n^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-5})(z-(-q)^{4s+m-3})}{d_{n,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.67}$$

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{n,n}((-q)^{m-1}z)d_{n,n^{m-1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{d_{n,n^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s-m-1})(z-(-q)^{4s+m-3})}{d_{n,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.68}$$

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{2n+m-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

implies that

$$\frac{d_{n,n^m}(z)d_{n,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{n,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{n,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{n,n^m}(z)a_{n,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By our induction hypothesis and a direct computation, we have

$$\frac{a_{n,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{n,n^m}(z)a_{n,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{n'} \frac{(z-(-q)^{m-5+4s})}{(z-(-q)^{m-3+4s})},$$

$$\frac{d_{n,n^m}(z)d_{n,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{n,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{n,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{2n+m-5+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-5})}.$$

Therefore, we have

$$\frac{d_{n,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{2n+m-5+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-5})} \times \prod_{s=1}^{n'} \frac{(z-(-q)^{m-5+4s})}{(z-(-q)^{m-3+4s})} = \frac{d_{n,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{2n+m-5+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{m-3+4s})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

Thus we can conclude that

$$d_{n,n^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-5})^{\epsilon'_s} \prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-3})$$

for some $\epsilon'_s \in \{0,1\}$.

(b-1) For simplicity, write $n'' = \left\lfloor \dfrac{n-1}{2} \right\rfloor$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{n-1,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)d_{n-1,n}((-q)^{1-m}z)}{d_{n-1,n^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-3})(z-(-q)^{4s+m-1})}{d_{n-1,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.69}$$

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{n-1,n}((-q)^{m-1}z)d_{n-1,n^{m-1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{d_{n-1,n^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s-m+1})(z-(-q)^{4s+m-1})}{d_{n-1,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.70}$$

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n}\big)_{(-q)^{2n+m-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

implies that we have

$$\frac{d_{n-1,n^m}(z)d_{n-1,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{n^{m-1},n-1}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{(n^{m-1},n-1}((-q)z)}{a_{n-1,n^m}(z)a_{n-1,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By induction and a direct computation, we have

$$\frac{a_{n^{m-1},n-1}((-q)z)}{a_{n-1,n^m}(z)a_{n-1,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{n''}\frac{(z-(-q)^{m-3+4s})}{(z-(-q)^{m-1+4s})},$$

$$\frac{d_{n-1,n^m}(z)d_{n-1,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{(n-1)^{m-1},n}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{n-1,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{2n+m-3+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-3})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{d_{n-1,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{2n+m-3+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-3})} \times \prod_{s=1}^{n''}\frac{(z-(-q)^{m-3+4s})}{(z-(-q)^{m-1+4s})} \\
&= \frac{d_{n-1,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{2n+m-3+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{m-1+4s})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].
\end{aligned}$$

Note that $2n+m-3+4s' \neq m-1+4s$. Thus we can conclude that

$$d_{n-1,n^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-3})^{\epsilon''_s}\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-1})$$

for some $\epsilon''_s \in \{0,1\}$.

By (7.67), (7.68), (7.69) and (7.70), it is enough to consider when $m \le n$.
(a,b) Note that we have a surjective homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{-n+2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-2})_{(-q)} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n-1}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n}),$$

which implies

$$\frac{d_{1,n^m}((-q)^{-n+2}z)d_{n-2,n^m}((-q)z)}{d_{n-1,n^m}(z)d_{n,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Note that

$$\frac{d_{1,n^m}((-q)^{-n+2}z)d_{n-2,n^m}((-q)z)}{d_{n-1,n^m}(z)d_{n,n^m}(z)}$$
$$= \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n-1}(z-(-q)^{m-1+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-3})^{\epsilon''_s}\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-1})\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-5})^{\epsilon'_s}\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-3})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Thus we can conclude that $\epsilon'_s = \epsilon''_s = 0$ for all cases. Hence our assertion follows. □

As Lemma 7.32, we obtain the following lemma:

Lemma 7.55. *For $m, p \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$, we have*

$$d_{n^p,n^m}(z) \text{ divides } \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t-2+|p-m|}).$$

Lemma 7.56. *For $|m-p| \ge n-2$, we have*

$$d_{n^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t-2+|p-m|}).$$

Proof. For simplicity, write $n' = \dfrac{n}{2}$. Without loss of generality, we can assume that $2 \le p \le m$. Then our assertion can be re-written as follows:

$$d_{n^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t-2+m-p}).$$

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{2n+p-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{p-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

tells that we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n,n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)}{d_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)}{a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n,n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By induction, we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n,n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)}{d_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{2n+p+m-6+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t-2+m-p})}$$

On the other hand, we have

$$\frac{a_{n^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)}{a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n,n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{n'}\frac{(z-(-q)^{p-m-4+4s})}{(z-(-q)^{m+p-4+4s})}$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{2n+p+m-6+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t-2+m-p})} \times \prod_{s=1}^{n'}\frac{(z-(-q)^{p-m-4+4s})}{(z-(-q)^{m+p-4+4s})}$$

$$= \frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{2n+p+m-6+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{m-p-2+4s+2t})} \times \prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{p-m-4+4s}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

Since $2n+p+m-6+4s' \neq m-p-2+4s+2t$, the above equation is equivalent to

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{p-m-4+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{m-p-2+4s+2t})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]. \tag{7.71}$$

Therefore, our assertion holds, since ($u := m-p \geq n-2$)

$$p-m-4+4s' \neq m-p-2+4s+2t \iff 2(s'-s)-t \neq u+1$$

for $1 \leq s \leq n'$ and $0 \leq t \leq p-1$. The remaining cases can be proved in a similar way. $\square$

Lemma 7.57. *For $m,p \geq 1$,*

$$d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z) \ \textit{divides} \ \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor\frac{n-1}{2}\rfloor}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+|p-m|}).$$

Proof. (1) We first assume that $2 \leq p \leq m$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\Big(\boxed{(n-1)^{p-1}}\Big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\Big(\boxed{n-1}\Big)_{(-q)^{1-p}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\Big(\boxed{(n-1)^p}\Big),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{(n-1)^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)d_{n-1,n^m}((-q)^{1-p}z)}{d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]$$

since

$$\frac{a_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)}{a_{(n-1)^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)a_{n-1,n^m}((-q)^{1-p}z)} = 1.$$

By induction, we have

$$d_{(n-1)^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z) \text{ divides } \prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m-p}),$$

and we know

$$d_{n-1,n^m}((-q)^{1-p}z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor\frac{n-1}{2}\rfloor}(z-(-q)^{4s+m+p-2}).$$

Thus our assertion follows. $\square$

Lemma 7.58. *For $|m-p| \geq n-2$, we have*

$$d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor\frac{n-1}{2}\rfloor}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+|p-m|}).$$

Proof. For simplicity, write $n'' = \lfloor\frac{n-1}{2}\rfloor$.
(1) We first assume that $2 \leq p \leq m$. Then our assertion can be re-written as follows:

$$d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m-p}).$$

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\left(\boxed{(n-1)^p}\right) \otimes \mathtt{V}\left(\boxed{n-1}\right)_{(-q)^{2n+p-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\left(\boxed{(n-1)^{p-1}}\right)_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

tells that we have

$$\frac{d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)d_{(n-1),n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)}{d_{(n-1)^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{(n-1)^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)}{a_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)a_{(n-1),n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

By induction, we have

$$\frac{d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)d_{(n-1),n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)}{d_{n-1^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{2n+p+m-4+4s})}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m-p})}.$$

A direct computation shows

$$\frac{a_{(n-1)^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)}{a_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)a_{(n-1),n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{n''}\frac{(z-(-q)^{-m+p-2+4s})}{(z-(-q)^{m+p-2+4s})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{2n+p+m-4+4s})}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m-p})} \times \prod_{s=1}^{n''}\frac{(z-(-q)^{-m+p-2+4s})}{(z-(-q)^{m+p-2+4s})}$$

$$= \frac{d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{2n+p+m-4+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m-p})} \times \prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{-m+p-2+4s}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

Note that

$$2n+p+m-4+4s' \neq 4s+2t+m-p \iff n+p-2 \neq 2(s-s')+t$$

for $1 \leq s, s' \leq n''$ and $0 \leq t \leq p-1$. Thus the above equation can be written as

$$\frac{d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z) \times \displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{-m+p-2+4s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m-p})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

Since $(u := m-p \geq n-2)$

$$-m+p-2+4s' \neq 4s+2t+m-p \iff 2(s'-s)-t \neq u+1$$

for $1 \leq s, s' \leq n''$ and $0 \leq t \leq p-1$, the assertion follows with Lemma 7.57. The remaining case can be proved in a similar way. $\square$

Proof of Theorem 6.5 *for $d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)$ and $d_{n^p,n^m}(z)$ in type $D_n^{(1)}$.* Consider the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{-m-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m+1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

then we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)}{d_{n^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)} \times \frac{a_{n^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

By direct computation, we have

$$\frac{a_{n^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)} = 1$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)}{d_{n^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)} &= \frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m+p-2})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m-p})} \\ &= \frac{d_{n^p,n^m}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m-p-2})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]\end{aligned}$$

which follows from the descending induction on $|m-p|$. Thus we can conclude that

$$d_{n^p,n^m} = \prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m-p-2}) \times \prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-p-2})^{\epsilon_s}$$

for some $\epsilon_s \in \{0,1\}$.

Similarly, we have

$$\frac{d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)d_{(n-1)^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)}{d_{(n-1)^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)} \times \frac{a_{(n-1)^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{a_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)a_{(n-1)^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By direct computation, we have

$$\frac{a_{(n-1)^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{a_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)a_{(n-1)^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)} = 1$$

and

$$\frac{d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)d_{(n-1)^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)}{d_{(n-1)^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)} = \frac{d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+p+m})}{\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m+2-p})}$$

$$= \frac{d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z)}{\prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m-p})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

which follows from the descending induction on $|m-p|$. Thus we can conclude that

$$d_{(n-1)^p,n^m} = \prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+2t+m-p}) \times \prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-p})^{\epsilon'_s}$$

for some $\epsilon'_s \in \{0,1\}$.

By the homomorphism obtained from Theorem 5.12 (5.10b) with the restriction $\min(k,l)=1$

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q)^n} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-2)^m})_{(-q)},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{n^p,(n-1)^m}(z)d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n^p,1^m}((-q)^n z)}{d_{n^p,(n-2)^m}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{n^p,(n-2)^m}((-q)z)}{a_{n^p,(n-1)^m}(z)a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n^p,1^m}((-q)^n z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By direct computation, we have ($n=2n'$)

$$\frac{a_{n^p,(n-2)^m}((-q)z)}{a_{n^p,(n-1)^m}(z)a_{n^p,n^m}(z)a_{n^p,1^m}((-q)^n z)} = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\frac{(z-(-q)^{p-m-2-2t})}{(z-(-q)^{m-p+2t})}$$

and

$$\frac{d_{n^p,(n-1)^m}(z)d_{n^p,n^m}(z)d_{n^p,1^m}((-q)^n z)}{d_{n^p,(n-2)^m}((-q)z)}$$

$$= \frac{\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-p})^{\epsilon'_s} \times \prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-p-2})^{\epsilon_s} \times \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{m-p+2t})}{\prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n-2}(z-(-q)^{m-p+2(s+t)}) \times \prod_{s=1}^{n-2}(z-(-q)^{m-p+2s})}$$

$$\times \prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{n-1}(z-(-q)^{2s+2t+m-p}) \times \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\frac{(z-(-q)^{p-m-2-2t})}{(z-(-q)^{m-p+2t})}$$

$$= \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-p})^{\epsilon'_s} \times \prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-p-2})^{\epsilon_s}}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n-2}(z-(-q)^{m-p+2s})}$$
$$\times \prod_{t=1}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{2n-2+2t+m-p}) \times \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{p-m-2-2t}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$
$$\Rightarrow \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n''}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-p})^{\epsilon'_s} \times \prod_{s=1}^{n'}(z-(-q)^{4s+m-p-2})^{\epsilon_s}}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{n-2}(z-(-q)^{m-p+2s})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

which implies $\epsilon_s = \epsilon'_s = 1$ for $1 \le s \le n'-1$. Hence, $\epsilon_{n'} = 1$ by the universal coefficient formula. The remaining cases can be proved in a similar way. $\square$

7.4.2. $d_{l^p,n^m}(z)$ *for* $1 \le l < n-1$. We recall that by the diagram symmetry, we have $d_{l^p,n^m}(z) = d_{l^p,(n-1)^m}(z)$. For $1 \le l < n-1$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} d_{k,n-1}(z) = d_{k,n}(z) &= \prod_{s=1}^{k}\big(z-(-q)^{n-k-1+2s}\big), \\ a_{k,n-1}(z) = a_{k,n}(z) &\equiv \frac{[n-k-1][3n+k-3]}{[n+k-1][3n-k-3]}. \end{aligned} \tag{7.72}$$

Lemma 7.59. *We have* $d_{1,n^2}(z) = d_{1,(n-1)^2}(z) = (z-(-q)^{n+1})$.

Proof. By (7.72), we have $d_{1,n}(z) = z-(-q)^n$. Hence it is enough to consider

$$\text{(i)}\quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2})_{(-q)^{n-1}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^n} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{n-2}}),$$
$$\text{(ii)}\quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2})_{(-q)^{n+1}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{n+2}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{n}}).$$

By Theorem 3.12, $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2})_{(-q)^{n-1}}) = 0$. Note that the sequences

$$(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^n}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{n-2}}) \quad \text{and} \quad (\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{n+2}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^n}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}))$$

are normal, since

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{n-2}}) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{n-2}}) = 0,$$

respectively. Thus Lemma 2.17 (b)(v) tells that

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^2})_{(-q)^{n+1}}) = 1,$$

which completes the assertion. $\square$

Lemma 7.60. *For* $m \ge 3$, *we have*

$$d_{1,n^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{n+m-1}) \quad \text{and} \quad d_{1,(n-1)^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{n+m-1}).$$

Proof. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{1,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)d_{1,n}((-q)^{1-m}z)}{d_{1,n^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{(z-(-q)^{n+m-3})(z-(-q)^{n+m-1})}{d_{1,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.73}$$

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{1,n}((-q)^{m-1}z)d_{1,n^{m-1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{d_{1,n^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{(z-(-q)^{n-m+1})(z-(-q)^{n+m-1})}{d_{1,n^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \tag{7.74}$$

Thus a possible ambiguity happens at $m=2$ which is already covered in the previous lemma.

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{2n+m-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

implies that

$$\frac{d_{1,n^m}(z)d_{1,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{1,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{1,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{1,n^m}(z)a_{1,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By our induction hypothesis, we have

$$\frac{d_{1,n^m}(z)d_{1,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{1,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{1,n^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{3n+m-3})}{(z-(-q)^{n+m-3})}.$$

On the other hand, we have

$$\frac{a_{1,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{1,n^m}(z)a_{1,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} = \frac{(z-(-q)^{n+m-3})}{(z-(-q)^{n+m-1})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{1,n^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{3n+m-3})}{(z-(-q)^{n+m-3})} \times \frac{(z-(-q)^{n+m-3})}{(z-(-q)^{n+m-1})} = \frac{d_{1,n^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{3n+m-3})}{(z-(-q)^{n+m-1})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}], \tag{7.75}$$

which implies our assertion for $m \geq 2$. □

Lemma 7.61. *For $1 \leq l \leq n-2$ and $m \geq 1$, we have*

$$d_{l,n^m}(z) = d_{l,(n-1)^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l+m-2+2s}).$$

Proof. By Dorey's rule in Theorem 3.15

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l-1})_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{l-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l}),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l-1,n^m}((-q)^{-1}z)d_{1,n^m}((-q)^{l-1}z)}{d_{l,n^m}(z)} \equiv \frac{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l+m-2+2s})}{d_{l,n^m}(z)} \tag{7.76}$$

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{2n+m-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l,n^m}(z)d_{l,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{l,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{l,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{l,n^m}(z)a_{l,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By induction, we have

$$\frac{d_{l,n^m}(z)d_{l,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{l,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)} \equiv \frac{d_{l,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{3n+m-l-4+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l+m-4+2s})}.$$

On the other hand, we have

$$\frac{a_{l,n^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{l,n^m}(z)a_{l,n}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} = \frac{(z-(-q)^{n+m-l-2})}{(z-(-q)^{n+m+l-2})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{l,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{3n+m-l-4+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l+m-4+2s})} \times \frac{(z-(-q)^{n+m-l-2})}{(z-(-q)^{n+m+l-2})}$$
$$= \frac{d_{l,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{3n+m-l-4+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l+m-2+2s})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}],$$

which implies our assertion, since $n-l+m-2+2s' \neq 3n+m-l-4+2s$ for $1 \le s \le l < n$. □

Lemma 7.62. *For $1 \le l \le n-2$ and $p \ge 1$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,n}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l+p-2+2s}).$$

Proof. Since $a_{l^p,n}(z) = a_{l,n^p}(z)$, we can apply the same argument of the previous lemma. □

As Lemma 7.17, we obtain the following lemma:

Lemma 7.63. *Let $1 \le l \le n-2$ and $p, m \ge 1$, then*

$$d_{l^p,n^m}(z) \ \textit{divides} \ \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l-1+|p-m|+2(s+t)}).$$

Lemma 7.64. *For $1 \le l \le n-2$ and $|m-p| \ge l-1$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l-1+|p-m|+2(s+t)}).$$

Proof. Assume that $p \le m$ and $m-p \ge l-1$. By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l})_{(-q)^{2n+p-3}} \twoheadrightarrow {}^{\text{‘}}\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{p-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{l,n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)}{d_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{l,n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By induction, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{l,n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)}{d_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{3n+p-l+m-5+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l-1+m-p+2(s+t)})}$$

On the other hand, we have

$$\frac{a_{l^{p-1},n^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{l,n^m}((-q)^{-2n-p+3}z)} = \prod_{s=1}^{l}\frac{(z-(-q)^{n-l-m+p-3+2s})}{(z-(-q)^{n-l+m+p-3+2s})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{3n+p-l+m-5+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-2}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l-1+m-p+2(s+t)})} \times \prod_{s=1}^{l}\frac{(z-(-q)^{n-l-m+p-3+2s})}{(z-(-q)^{n-l+m+p-3+2s})} \\
&= \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{3n+p-l+m-5+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l-1+m-p+2(s+t)})} \times \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l-m+p-3+2s}) \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].
\end{aligned} \tag{7.77}$$

Note that $3n+p-l+m-5+2s' \neq n-l-m+p-3+2s$. Thus the above equation can be written as follows:

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\times\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n+l-m+p-1-2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l-1+m-p+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]. \tag{7.78}$$

Thus our assertion follows, since ($u := m-p \geq l-1$)

$$n-l-1+m-p+2(s+t) \neq n+l-m+p-1-2s' \iff u \neq l-(s'+s)-t$$

for $1 \leq s \leq l$ and $0 \leq t \leq p-1$. The case when $\min(m,p)=m$ can be proved in a similar way. $\square$

Proof of Theorem 6.5 *for $l < n-1$ and $k = n$ in type $D_n^{(1)}$.* We first assume that $p \leq m$. Considering the homomorphism obtained from Theorem 5.12 (5.10a) with the restriction $\min(k,l)=1$

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^p}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^p})_{(-q)^{2n-l-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^p})_{(-q)},$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{1^p,n^m}((-q)^{2n-l-1}z)}{d_{(l-1)^p,n^m}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{(l-1)^p,n^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{1^p,n^m}((-q)^{2n-l-1}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

By direct computation,

$$\frac{a_{(l-1)^p,n^m}((-q)z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{1^p,n^m}((-q)^{2n-l-1}z)} = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\frac{(z-(-q)^{-n+l-1-m+p-2t})}{(z-(-q)^{-n+l+1+m-p+2t})}$$

Furthermore, by an induction on l, we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{1^p,n^m}((-q)^{2n-l-1}z)}{d_{(l-1)^p,n^m}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{-n+l+m-p+1+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q)^{n-l-1+m-p+2(s+t)})}$$

Here the induction works because the range of $|m-p|$ happening ambiguity depends on l. Thus we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{-n+l+m-p+1+2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q)^{n-l-1+m-p+2(s+t)})} \times \prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\frac{(z-(-q)^{-n+l-1-m+p-2t})}{(z-(-q)^{-n+l+1+m-p+2t})} \\
&= \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}(z-(-q)^{-n+l-1-m+p-2t})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q)^{n-l-1+m-p+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}] \\
&\Rightarrow \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q)^{n-l-1+m-p+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]
\end{aligned} \tag{7.79}$$

Consider fusion rule

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n})_{(-q)^{-m-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{m+1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

then we have

$$\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{l^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)}{d_{l^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)} \times \frac{a_{l^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{l^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

By direct computation, we have

$$\frac{a_{l^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{a_{l^p,n^m}(z)a_{l^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)} = 1$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)d_{l^p,n}((-q)^{-m-1}z)}{d_{l^p,n^{m+1}}((-q)^{-1}z)} &= \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l+p+m-1+2s})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l+1+m-p+2(s+t)})} \\
&= \frac{d_{l^p,n^m}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=1}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{n-l-1+m-p+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]
\end{aligned} \tag{7.80}$$

which follows from the descending induction on $|m-p|$. From (7.78), (7.79), (7.80) and Lemma 7.63, our assertion follows. The remaining case of $p > m$ can be proved similarly. □

7.4.3. *$d_{k^m,l^p}(z)$ for $1 \le k,l < n-1$.* For $1 \le k,l < n-1$, we have

$$d_{k,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} \big(z-(-q)^{|k-l|+2s}\big)\big(z-(-q)^{2n-2-k-l+2s}\big),$$

$$a_{k,l}(z) \equiv \frac{[|k-l|][2n+k+l-2][2n-k-l-2][4n-|k-l|-4]}{[k+l][2n+k-l-2][2n-k+l-2][4n-k-l-4]},$$

and surjective homomorphisms

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k-1}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{k-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{k}\big) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{1-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l-1}\big)_{-q} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l}\big),$$

as special cases in Theorem 3.15.

Lemma 7.65. *For any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$, we have*

$$d_{1,1^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{m+1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-3}). \tag{7.81}$$

Proof. By the homomorphism,

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big),$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{d_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)d_{1,1}((-q)^{1-m}z)}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \\ &\qquad \equiv \frac{(z-(-q)^{m-1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-5})(z-(-q)^{m+1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-3})}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \end{aligned} \tag{7.82}$$

By the homomorphism,

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big),$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{d_{1,1}((-q)^{m-1}z)d_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \\ &\qquad \equiv \frac{(z-(-q)^{3-m})(z-(-q)^{2n-m-1})(z-(-q)^{m+1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-3})}{d_{1,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \end{aligned} \tag{7.83}$$

Thus a possible ambiguity happens at $m=2$. However, $(-q)$ cannot be a root of $d_{1,1^2}(z)$ by Theorem 3.12, and

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^2})_{(-q)^{2n-3}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{2n-2}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{2n-4}}) = 0, \tag{7.84}$$

by the following argument: Take $L = \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{2n-2}}$ and $L' = \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{2n-4}}$. Then (L, L') satisfies (2.6) and $\mathscr{D}^{-1}L = \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)$. Hence Lemma 2.21 implies (7.84); i.e., $(-q)^{2n-3}$ can not be a root of $d_{1,1^2}(z)$, either.

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1}\big)_{(-q)^{2n+m-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

implies that we have

$$\frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)d_{1,1}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{1,1^m}(z)a_{1,1}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By induction, we have

$$\frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)d_{1,1}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)} \equiv \frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{2n+m-1})(z-(-q)^{4n+m-5})}{(z-(-q)^{m-1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-5})}.$$

Additionally, we have

$$\frac{a_{1,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{1,1^m}(z)a_{1,1}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} = \frac{(z-(-q)^{m-1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-5})}{(z-(-q)^{m+1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-3})},$$

and so we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{2n+m-1})(z-(-q)^{4n+m-5})}{(z-(-q)^{m-1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-5})} \times \frac{(z-(-q)^{m-1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-5})}{(z-(-q)^{m+1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-3})} \\ &= \frac{d_{1,1^m}(z)(z-(-q)^{2n+m-1})(z-(-q)^{4n+m-5})}{(z-(-q)^{m+1})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-3})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \end{aligned} \tag{7.85}$$

Thus our assertion follows. □

Lemma 7.66. *For any $1 \le k \le n-2$ and $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$, we have*

$$d_{k,1^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{k+m})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m-2}). \tag{7.86}$$

Proof. Our assertion for $k = 1$ holds already. Now we consider the case when $k > 1$. By Dorey's rule in Theorem 3.15

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k-1})_{(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{k-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k}),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{k-1,1^m}((-q)^{-1}z)d_{1,1^m}((-q)^{k-1}z)}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \times \frac{a_{k,1^m}(z)}{a_{k-1,1^m}((-q)^{-1}z)a_{1,1^m}((-q)^{k-1}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{a_{k,1^m}(z)}{a_{k-1,1^m}((-q)^{-1}z)a_{1,1^m}((-q)^{k-1}z)} &= \frac{(z-(-q)^{-m-k+2})}{(z-(-q)^{m-k+2})} \\ \frac{d_{k-1,1^m}((-q)^{-1}z)d_{1,1^m}((-q)^{k-1}z)}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} &= \frac{(z-(-q)^{k+m})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m})(z-(-q)^{m-k+2})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-k-2})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)}, \end{aligned}$$

and so we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{(z-(-q)^{k+m})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m})(z-(-q)^{m-k+2})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-k-2})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \times \frac{(z-(-q)^{-m-k+2})}{(z-(-q)^{m-k+2})} \\ &= \frac{(z-(-q)^{k+m})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m})(z-(-q)^{-m-k+2})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-k-2})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]. \end{aligned} \tag{7.87}$$

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{1-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k-1})_{(-q)} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k}),$$

we have

$$\frac{d_{1,1^m}((-q)^{1-k}z)d_{k-1,1^m}((-q)z)}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \times \frac{a_{k,1^m}(z)}{a_{1,1^m}((-q)^{1-k}z)a_{k-1,1^m}((-q)z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{a_{k,1^m}(z)}{a_{1,1^m}((-q)^{1-k}z)a_{k-1,1^m}((-q)z)} &= \frac{(z-(-q)^{k-m-2})}{(z-(-q)^{k+m-2})} \\ \frac{d_{1,1^m}((-q)^{1-k}z)d_{k-1,1^m}((-q)z)}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} &= \frac{(z-(-q)^{m+k})(z-(-q)^{2n+m+k-2})(z-(-q)^{k+m-2})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m-2})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)}, \end{aligned}$$

and so we have

$$\frac{(z-(-q)^{m+k})(z-(-q)^{2n+m+k-2})(z-(-q)^{k+m-2})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m-2})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \times \frac{(z-(-q)^{k-m-2})}{(z-(-q)^{k+m-2})}$$

$$= \frac{(z-(-q)^{m+k})(z-(-q)^{2n+m+k-2})(z-(-q)^{k-m-2})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m-2})}{d_{k,1^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]. \tag{7.88}$$

On the other hand, the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})_{(-q)^{2n+m-3}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}}$$

implies that we have

$$\frac{d_{k,1^m}(z)d_{k,1}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{k,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)} \times \frac{a_{k,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{k,1^m}(z)a_{k,1}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}].$$

By induction, we have

$$\frac{d_{k,1^m}(z)d_{k,1}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)}{d_{k,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)} = \frac{d_{k,1^m}(z) \times (z-(-q)^{2n+m+k-2})(z-(-q)^{4n+m-k-4})}{(z-(-q)^{k+m-2})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m-4})}.$$

Furthermore, we have

$$\frac{a_{k,1^{m-1}}((-q)z)}{a_{k,1^m}(z)a_{k,1}((-q)^{-2n-m+3}z)} = \frac{(z-(-q)^{m+k-2})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-k-4})}{(z-(-q)^{2n+m-k-2})(z-(-q)^{m+k})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{k,1^m}(z) \times (z-(-q)^{2n+m+k-2})(z-(-q)^{4n+m-k-4})}{(z-(-q)^{k+m-2})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m-4})} \times \frac{(z-(-q)^{m+k-2})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-k-4})}{(z-(-q)^{2n+m-k-2})(z-(-q)^{m+k})}$$

$$= \frac{d_{k,1^m}(z) \times (z-(-q)^{2n+m+k-2})(z-(-q)^{4n+m-k-4})}{(z-(-q)^{2n+m-k-2})(z-(-q)^{m+k})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}],$$

which implies our assertion with (7.87) and (7.88). □

Lemma 7.67. *For any $1 \le k \le n-2$ and $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$, we have*

$$d_{1,k^m}(z) = (z-(-q)^{k+m})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m-2}). \tag{7.89}$$

Proof. Our assertion for $k=1$ holds already. Now we consider the remaining cases.

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})_{(-q)} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{1-m}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}),$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{d_{1,k^{m-1}}((-q)z)d_{1,k}((-q)^{1-m}z)}{d_{1,k^m}(z)} \\ &\equiv \frac{(z-(-q)^{k+m-2})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m-4})(z-(-q)^{k+m})(z-(-q)^{2n+m-k-2})}{d_{1,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]. \end{aligned} \tag{7.90}$$

By the homomorphism

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{m-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m-1}})_{(-q)^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}),$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{d_{1,k}((-q)^{m-1}z)d_{1,k^{m-1}}((-q)^{-1}z)}{d_{1,k^m}(z)} \\ &\equiv \frac{(z-(-q)^{k-m+2})(z-(-q)^{2n-k-m})(z-(-q)^{k+m})(z-(-q)^{2n-k+m-2})}{d_{1,k^m}(z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm1}]. \end{aligned} \tag{7.91}$$

By (7.90) and (7.91), an ambiguity possible happens when $m = 2$. Let us resolve the ambiguity: Note that $d_{1,k}(z) = (z - (-q)^{k+1})(z - (-q)^{2n-k-1})$. Then we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^2})_{(-q)^{k+1}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1}), \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k-1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{k+1}}) = 0$$

by Theorem 3.12. By taking $L = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1})$, $L' = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{2n-k-1}}$ and $X = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q)^{2n-k-3}}$, one can easily check that the root modules satisfies the assumption in Lemma 2.22 (i) since $k > 1$. Since $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}L, X) = 1$ and $\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}L, L' \nabla X) = 0$, the root modules satisfies the assumption in (a) of Lemma 2.22 (i). Hence $\mathfrak{d}(L, L' \nabla X) = \mathfrak{d}(L, X) = 0$. Hence $(-q)^k$ and $(-q)^{2n-k-2}$ can not be roots of $d_{1,k^2}(z)$. Then the result follows similar to the previous cases. $\square$

As Proposition 7.16 and Lemma 7.17, we can obtain the following proposition and lemma.

Proposition 7.68. *For any $1 \le l, k \le n-2$ and $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$, we have*

$$d_{l,k^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z - (-q)^{|k-l|+m-1+2s})(z - (-q)^{2n-k-l+m-3+2s}). \tag{7.92}$$

Lemma 7.69. *For $1 \le k, l \le n-2$ and $\max(m,p) \ge 1$, we have*

$$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) \text{ divides } \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z - (-q)^{|k-l|+|m-p|+2(s+t)})(z - (-q)^{2n-k-l+|m-p|-2+2(s+t)}).$$

Proof of Theorem 6.5 *for* $\max(l,k) < n-1$ *in type* $D_n^{(1)}$. Without loss of generality, assume $p \le m$. We consider the case when $l \le k$. Recall that, for $1 \le k, l \le n-2$ and $n', n'' \in \{n-1, n\}$ such that $n' - n'' \equiv_2 n - k$, we have

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n'^m})_{(-q)^{-n+k+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n''^m})_{(-q)^{n-k-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}),$$

by Theorem 5.12 (5.10e) *without* the restriction on k. By duality, we have

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n'^m})_{(-q)^{n+k-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n''^m})_{(-q)^{n-k-1}}.$$

Assume that $n - k \equiv_2 0$ and take $n' = n'' = n$. Then we have

$$\frac{d_{k^m,l^p}(z) d_{n^m,l^p}((-q)^{n+k-1}z)}{d_{n^m,l^p}((-q)^{n-k-1}z)} \times \frac{a_{n^m,l^p}((-q)^{n-k-1}z)}{a_{k^m,l^p}(z) a_{n^m,l^p}((-q)^{n+k-1}z)} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

By direct calculation, we have

$$\frac{a_{n^m,l^p}((-q)^{n-k-1}z)}{a_{k^m,l^p}(z) a_{n^m,l^p}((-q)^{n+k-1}z)} = \prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} \frac{(z - (-q)^{l-k-m+p-2(s+t)})}{(z - (-q)^{-l-k+m-p+2(s+t)})},$$

$$\frac{d_{k^m,l^p}(z) d_{n^m,l^p}((-q)^{n+k-1}z)}{d_{n^m,l^p}((-q)^{n-k-1}z)} = \frac{d_{k^m,l^p}(z) \displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-q)^{-l-k+m-p+2(s+t)})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})}.$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{d_{k^m,l^p}(z) \displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-q)^{-l-k+m-p+2(s+t)})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})} \times \prod_{t=0}^{p-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} \frac{(z - (-q)^{l-k-m+p-2(s+t)})}{(z - (-q)^{-l-k+m-p+2(s+t)})}$$

$$= \frac{d_{k^m,l^p}(z)\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{l-k-m+p-2(s+t)})}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}]$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{d_{k^m,l^p}(z)}{\displaystyle\prod_{t=0}^{p-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q)^{k-l+m-p+2(s+t)})} \in \mathbf{k}[z^{\pm 1}].$$

Then the assertion for this case follows from Lemma 7.69. The remaining cases can be proved in a similar way. ☐

Corollary 7.70. *For $m \le n-2$, the KR module $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_x$ $(x \in \mathbf{k}^\times)$ is a root module.*

7.5. **Remark on twisted affine types.** Using the exact monoidal functor $\mathcal{F}_A^0$, which preserves (i) $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants between fundamental modules and (ii) KR modules, we can derive the denominator formulas for $\mathfrak{g} = A_n^{(2)}$ from those of $\mathfrak{g} = A_n^{(1)}$. For $\mathfrak{g} = D_{n+1}^{(2)}$ and $\mathfrak{g} = D_4^{(3)}$, the exact monoidal functor $\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{1,t}$ $(t = 1, 2, 3)$, which preserves $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants and KR modules in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}$, ensures that the denominator formulas between KR modules in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{(t)}$ can be obtained. Using these formulas as a base, together with the framework developed in the previous subsections and the restricted higher Dorey's rule, we establish the denominator formulas for $\mathfrak{g} = D_{n+1}^{(2)}$ and $\mathfrak{g} = D_4^{(3)}$.

8. Applications

In this section, we investigate the application of the denominator formulas. As we did, we shall focus on the untwisted affine types, since the results in this section can be extended to corresponding twisted affine types in a canonical way.

8.1. **Higher Dorey's rule without restriction.** Now, by using the denominator formulas for KR modules, we can remove the restriction $\min(k,l) = 1$ in Theorem 5.12, thereby completing the generalization of Dorey's rule in comparison to Theorem 5.12.

Note that we have a difficulty for computing $d^{C_n^{(1)}}_{k^m,l^p}(z)$ when $m, p > 1$ are odd and $k = l < n$. In the following lemma, we refine $d^{C_n^{(1)}}_{k^m,k^m}(z)$ for an odd m and $2k \le n$.

Lemma 8.1. *For $\mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}$ and $k + l \le n$, we have*

(i) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{-k}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{l}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{-k}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{l+1}})$,

(ii) $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{-k-1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{l+1}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{-k-1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{l+2}})$

for any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 2}$.

Proof. Since their proofs are similar, we shall prove only (i). Without loss of generality, we assume that $k \ge l$. Note that

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{l+1}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{m+l+1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{l}}$$

and

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{-k}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{m+l+1}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{-2n-2-k}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k})_{(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{m+l+1}}) = 0$$

by

$$d_{k,l^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{k-l+m-1+2s})(z-(-q_\mathfrak{s})^{2n-k-l+m+1+2s}).$$

Namely,
(a) $k+l+m+1 \neq k-l+m-1+2s \iff l+1>s$,
(b) $k+l+m+1 \neq 2n-k-l+m+1+2s \iff (n-k-l)+s>0$,
(c) $2n+k+l+m+3 \neq k-l+m-1+2s \iff n+(l-s)+2>0$,
(d) $2n+k+l+m+3 \neq 2n-k-l+m+1+2s \iff k+(l-s)+1>0$,
for $1 \le s \le l$ and $k+l \le n$. Thus we have the assertion by Lemma 2.12 (ii). □

For an odd m, we have ambiguities for $d^{C_n^{(1)}}_{k^m,k^m}(z)$, while we do *not* have such ambiguities for $d^{C_n^{(1)}}_{k^m,k^{m+1}}(z)$. Thus the above lemma refines $d^{C_n^{(1)}}_{k^m,k^m}(z)$ for an odd m and $2k \le n$ as we desired.

Theorem 8.2 (Higher Dorey's rule II)**.** *For $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ of non-exceptional untwisted affine type, let $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$ and*

(1) *For $1 \le k,l < n$, let us assume $k+l < n-\delta(\mathfrak{g}=D_n^{(1)})$. Then, we have*

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-\check{q}_l)^{-k}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-\check{q}_k)^{l}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(k+l)^m}). \tag{8.1a}$$

In particular, if $\mathfrak{g} \neq A_{n-1}^{(1)}$ and $k+l = n-\delta(\mathfrak{g}=D_n^{(1)})$, we have

$$\begin{cases} \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-1)^{m+l}q^{-l}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-1)^{k+m}q^{k}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{2m}}) & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}=B_n^{(1)}, \\ \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-k}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2\rceil}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2\rfloor}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{\epsilon}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}=C_n^{(1)}, \\ \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q)^{-k}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q)^{l}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m}) \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m}) & \text{if } \mathfrak{g}=D_n^{(1)}, \end{cases} \tag{8.1b}$$

where $\epsilon = \delta(m \equiv_2 0)$.

(2) *For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $B_n^{(1)}$ and $1 \le l < n < k < 2n-1$ with $k+l \le 2n-1$*

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathtt{W}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q)^{-k+1}} \nabla \mathtt{W}(\boxed{k^m})_{-(-q)^{l}} \simeq \mathtt{W}(\boxed{(k+l)^m}) \\ &\iff \mathtt{V}(\boxed{\bar{l}^m})_{(-q)^{k-1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{\bar{k}^m})_{-(-q)^{l}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(\overline{k+l})^m})_{(-1)}. \end{aligned} \tag{8.1c}$$

(3) *For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $B_n^{(1)}$, $1 \le l < n$ and m is even, we have*

$$\mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-1)^{n+l}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2(n-l)+1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{n^m})_{(-1)^{n+l}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2(n-l)-1}} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{m/2}})_{(-1)^{m/2}q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^{m/2}})_{(-1)^{m/2}q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-1}}. \tag{8.1d}$$

Proof of (8.1a)–(8.1c)*.* Since the proofs are similar, we only give a proof for $\mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}$ of (8.1a) and $l \le k$. Let us apply induction on $2 \le l \le k$ with $k+l \le n-1$, since the case when $l=1$ is proved in Theorem 5.12. By Lemma 8.1, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-k}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l+1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-k}}),$$
$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-k}}) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^{m+1}})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l+1}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-k}}),$$

while

$$d_{k^{m+1},l^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{m-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+1+2(s+t)})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+3-k-l+2(s+t)}),$$
$$d_{k^{m+1},(l-1)^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{m-1}\prod_{s=1}^{l-1}(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{k-l+2+2(s+t)})(z-(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+4-k-l+2(s+t)}).$$

Thus we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-k}}) = \min(l,m),$$
$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{l}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^m})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1-k}}) = \min(l,m)-1.$$

On the other hand,

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^l}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{l-1-k}}) = 1$$

by Corollary 5.14. Hence we know

$$\begin{aligned}&\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^l}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-k}})\\ &\qquad = \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^l}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{l-1-k}}) + \mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^l}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1-k}}),\end{aligned}$$

where $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^l-1-k} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1-k}} = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-k}}$. Thus the sequence

$$(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1-k}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{l-1-k}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^l}) \text{ is normal,}$$

by Proposition 2.17 (b-iv). Hence we have the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{1^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{l-1-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^l} \arrow[r, two heads, "\dagger"] \arrow[d, two heads, "\dagger"'] & \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^l} \arrow[d, two heads] \\
\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(l-1)^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1-k}} \otimes \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(k+1)^m})_{(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{l-1}} \arrow[r, two heads, "*"] & \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(k+l)^m}),
\end{tikzcd} \tag{8.2}$$

where $\overset{*}{\twoheadrightarrow}$ follows from the induction and $\overset{\dagger}{\twoheadrightarrow}$ follows from Theorem 5.12. Hence the assertion follows. ☐

Remark 8.3. Let us consider $\mathfrak{g} = A^{(1)}_{n-1}$, $1 < m < n$, $k + l = n - 1$, and $\min(k, l) > 1$. In this case, although neither $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})$ nor $\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})$ are root modules, we have

$$M := \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q)^{-k}} \nabla \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q)^l} \simeq \mathtt{V}(\boxed{(n-1)^m}),$$

which is a root module as shown in Corollary 7.8. To the best of the authors' knowledge, this provides the first example in which two non-root modules produce a root module as their head. Notably, it occurs even when $\mathfrak{d}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q)^{-k}}, \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q)^l}) > 1$ (see (8.5) below), which has not been seen before either (cf. Lemma 2.21). Also, it would be natural to ask whether $N := \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q)^{-k}} \Delta \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q)^l}$ is also a root module or not, since $\Lambda^\infty(M, M) = \Lambda^\infty(N, N) = -2$.

Corollary 8.4. *Let us take $k, l \in I$ as in the above theorem and set*

$$M := \mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-\check{q}_l)^{-k}} \quad \textit{and} \quad N := \mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-\check{q}_l)^l}.$$

(a) *$M \nabla N$ is real*
(b) *$M \nabla N$ strongly commutes with M and N.*
(c) *For any $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, we have*

$$M^{\otimes a} \nabla N^{\otimes b} \simeq \begin{cases} (M \nabla N)^{\otimes a} \otimes N^{\otimes (b-a)} & \text{if } a \le b, \\ (M \nabla N)^{\otimes a} \otimes M^{\otimes (a-b)} & \text{if } b \le a. \end{cases}$$

Proof. The first assertion is obvious. The second assertion follows from i-box argument. For instance, when $\mathfrak{g} = A^{(1)}_n$, we have

$$\mathrm{exrch}_{k+l}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{l^m})_{(-q)^{-k}}) = [-m-2k, m] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{exrch}_{k+l}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{k^m})_{(-q)^l}) = [-m, m+2l]$$

while $\mathrm{rch}(\mathtt{V}(\boxed{(k+l)^m})) = [1-m, m-1]$.

For the last assertion, we shall prove only the first isomorphism. We argue by induction on $a \le b$. If $a = 0$, the assertion is obvious. Assume that $a > 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} M^{\otimes a} \otimes N^{\otimes b} &\twoheadrightarrow M^{\otimes a-1} \otimes (M \nabla N) \otimes N^{\otimes b-1} \\ &\simeq (M \nabla N) \otimes M^{\otimes a-1} \otimes N^{\otimes b-1} \\ &\twoheadrightarrow (M \nabla N) \otimes ((M \nabla N)^{\otimes a-1} \otimes N^{\otimes b-a}) \\ &\simeq (M \nabla N)^{\otimes a} \otimes N^{\otimes b-a}. \end{aligned}$$

Now the assertion follows from the fact that $(M \nabla N)^{\otimes a} \otimes N^{\otimes b-a}$ is a simple quotient of $M^{\otimes a} \otimes N^{\otimes b}$ which has a simple head. □

Proof of (8.1d). Let us write $m = 2m'$. In this case, we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m'}}\big)_{(-1)^{n+l} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2(n-l)+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m'}}\big)_{(-1)^{n+l} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2(n-l)-1}} \\ &\qquad \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{m'}}\big)_{(-1)^{m'} q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-l)^{m'}}\big)_{(-1)^{n+m'} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2n+1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m'}}\big)_{(-1)^{n+l} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2(n-l)-1}} \\ &\qquad\qquad \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{m'}}\big)_{(-1)^{m'} q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{m'}}\big)_{(-1)^{m'} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-1}}, \end{aligned}$$

by (8.1b), which implies the assertion. □

Here we propose the following conjecture, where the case $l = n-1$ is the T-system.

Conjecture 8.5. *For $\mathfrak{g}$ of type $B_n^{(1)}$, $1 \le l < n-1$ and $m \in 2\mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1} + 1$, we have*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^{n+l} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-2(n-l)+1}} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^{n+l} q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{2(n-l)-1}} \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{\lceil m/2\rceil}}\big)_{(-1)^{\lceil m/2\rceil}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^{\lfloor m/2\rfloor}}\big)_{(-1)^{\lfloor m/2\rfloor}}. \tag{8.3}$$

Now we can remove the restriction $\min(a, b) = 1$ in Theorem 5.17 by using Theorem 8.2:

Theorem 8.6 (Higher Dorey's rule of mesh type II)**.** *For the classical untwisted affine types $\mathfrak{g} = A_{n-1}^{(1)}$, $B_n^{(1)}$, $C_n^{(1)}$, $D_n^{(1)}$, $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1}$ and $l < n' := n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)})$, assume $1 \le a, b < n'$ with $a + b < l$. Then we have*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{-b}} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-a})^{a}} \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-a-b})^{a-b}}. \tag{8.4a}$$

(a) *In particular, if $l = n'$, we have*

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n'-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{n'-b})^{-b}} \nabla \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n'-a)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{n'-a})^{a}} \\ &\simeq \begin{cases} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^m} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n'-a-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{n'-a-b})^{a-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}, \\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{\lceil m/2\rceil}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{\lfloor m/2\rfloor}}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{\epsilon}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n'-a-b)^m}\big)_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{a-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = C_n^{(1)}, \\ \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big) \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n'-a-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{a-b}} & \text{if } \mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)}, \end{cases} \end{aligned} \tag{8.4b}$$

for $a, b < n'$. Here we understand $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a-b)^s}\big)$ $(s \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 1})$ as the trivial module $\mathbf{1}$ when $l-a-b = 0$, and $\epsilon = \delta(m \equiv_2 0)$.

(b) *For $\mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}$ and $l > n$, take $a, b \in [1, 2n-1]$ with $l - a > n$, $l - b < n$ and $a + b < l$ if there are. Then we have*

$$\mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+1}} \nabla \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-a)^m}\big)_{-(-q)^{a}} \simeq \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)_{(-1)} \otimes \mathtt{W}\big(\boxed{(l-a-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{a-b+1}}. \tag{8.4c}$$

Proof. Since the proof is similar, we give only the proof of (8.4a) for $A_n^{(1)}$. Note that we have

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b}} \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+a}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{a^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_a)^{a-l}},$$

and

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{a^m}\big)_{(-q)^{a-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a)^m}\big)_{(-q)^a} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)$$

by (8.1a). Hence we have the sequence of homomorphism

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a)^m}\big)_{(-q)^a} \\
&\quad \rightarrowtail \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+a}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{a^m}\big)_{(-q)^{a-l}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a)^m}\big)_{(-q)^a} \\
&\quad \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+a}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)
\end{aligned}$$

whose composition does not vanish by Proposition 2.3. Since $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a-b)^m}\big)_{(-q)^{-b+a}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{l^m}\big)$ is simple by the i-box argument, the assertion follows. □

The following result generalizes (5.15a) and follows from the denominator formulas and Lemma 8.1.

Proposition 8.7. *For a classical untwisted affine type $\mathfrak{g} = A^{(1)}_{n-1}$, $B^{(1)}_n$, $C^{(1)}_n$, $D^{(1)}_n$, take $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$, $l < n' := n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D^{(1)}_n)$, and $a + b < l$ such that $a, b \geq 1$. Then we have*

$$\mathfrak{d}\big(\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-b)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-b})^{-b}}, \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(l-a)^m}\big)_{(-\check{q}_{l-a})^{a}}\big) = \min(a, b, m). \tag{8.5}$$

8.2. **Schur positivity via KR modules.** In this subsection, we first review the result in [FH14] briefly. Then we recover and extend it by using the our results in this paper.

For a positive integer k, we denote by $\mathcal{P}(k)$ the set of partitions of k:

$$\mathcal{P}(k) = \{(k_1 \geq \cdots \geq k_r \geq 0) \mid k_s \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0} \text{ and } k_1 + \cdots + k_r = k\}.$$

The reverse dominance relation $\preceq^r$ on $\mathcal{P}(k)$ is defined as follows: Let $\boldsymbol{\lambda} = (\lambda_1 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_{r_1} > 0)$, $\boldsymbol{\mu} = (\mu_1 \geq \cdots \geq \mu_{r_2} > 0) \in \mathcal{P}(k)$. Then

$$\boldsymbol{\lambda} \preceq^{\mathbf{r}} \boldsymbol{\mu} \iff \sum_{s=1}^{j} \lambda_s \geq \sum_{s=1}^{j} \mu_s \quad \text{for all } 1 \leq j \leq \min(r_1, r_2).$$

We say that $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ *covers* $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ if (i) $\boldsymbol{\lambda} \preceq^{\mathbf{r}} \boldsymbol{\mu}$ and (ii) $\boldsymbol{\lambda} \preceq^{\mathbf{r}} \boldsymbol{\nu} \preceq^{\mathbf{r}} \boldsymbol{\mu}$ implies $\boldsymbol{\nu} = \boldsymbol{\mu}$ or $\boldsymbol{\nu} = \boldsymbol{\lambda}$. Since $\mathcal{P}(k)$ is a finite set, for each pair $\boldsymbol{\lambda} \preceq^{\mathbf{r}} \boldsymbol{\mu}$, we can find $\boldsymbol{\nu}_0, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\nu}_l$ such that

$$\boldsymbol{\lambda} = \boldsymbol{\nu}_0 \preceq^{\mathbf{r}} \boldsymbol{\nu}_1 \ldots \preceq^{\mathbf{r}} \boldsymbol{\nu}_l = \boldsymbol{\mu} \text{ and } \boldsymbol{\nu}_i \text{ covers } \boldsymbol{\nu}_{i-1} \text{ for all } i.$$

Proposition 8.8 ([CFS14, Proposition 3.5])**.** *Let $\boldsymbol{\lambda} = (\lambda_1 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_s \geq 0)$, $\boldsymbol{\mu} = (\mu_1 \geq \cdots \geq \mu_s \geq 0) \in \mathcal{P}(k)$ and $\max(\lambda_s, \mu_s) > 0$. Suppose $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ covers $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$. Then there exists $i < j$ such that*

$$\mu_l = \lambda_l - \delta(l = i) + \delta(l = j) \text{ for all } 1 \leq l \leq s.$$

The cover relation on $\mathcal{P}(k)$ is completely determined by the cover relation on partitions of length 2.

Proposition 8.9. *Let $i \in I_0$ and $m_1 > m_2 \geq 0$. Then there exists a surjective of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-homomorphism*

$$\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{(m_2+1)}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_i)^{m_1-1-m_2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{(m_1-1)}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_i)^{-1}} \twoheadrightarrow \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{m_2}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_i)^{m_1-m_2-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{m_1}}\big). \tag{8.6}$$

Proof. The assertion for $m_2 = 0$ is obvious, and so we assume that $m_2 > 0$.

Let us set

$$L_1 := \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{m_1}}\big) \simeq \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i}\big)_{(-\check{q}_i)^{m_1-1}} \nabla L_1' \quad \text{and} \quad L_2 := \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{m_2}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_i)^{m_1-m_2-2}} \simeq L_2' \nabla \mathscr{D}\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i}\big)_{(-\check{q}_i)^{m_1-1}},$$

where

$$L_1' = \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{(m_1-1)}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_i)^{-1}} \quad \text{and} \quad L_2' = \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{(m_2+1)}}\big)_{(-\check{q}_i)^{m_1-1-m_2}}.$$

Then we have

$$\mathrm{exrch}_i(L_1) = [d_i(-1-m_1), d_i(m_1+1)] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{rch}_i(L_2) = [d_i(m_1-2m_2-1), d_i(m_1-3)],$$

which implies $L_2 \otimes L_1$ is simple as a $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module. On the other hand, we have the composition of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module homomorphisms

$$L_2' \otimes L_1' \rightarrowtail L_2 \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i}\big)_{(-\check{q}_i)^{m_1-1}} \otimes L_1' \twoheadrightarrow L_2 \otimes L_1$$

which does not vanish by Proposition 2.3 is surjective since $L_2 \otimes L_1$ is simple. Hence the assertion for $m_2 > 0$ follows. ☐

Let $\mathtt{KR}(m\varpi_i)$ be the restriction of $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^m}\big)_a$ as a $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module, which does *not* depend on the spectral parameter $a \in \mathbf{k}^\times$. By following the notation in [FH14], for $i \in I_0$ and $\boldsymbol{\lambda} = \big(\lambda_1 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_r > 0\big)$, we denote by

$$\mathtt{KR}(\boldsymbol{\lambda}, i) := \mathtt{KR}(\lambda_1\varpi_i) \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathtt{KR}(\lambda_r\varpi_i).$$

The following was first proved in [FH14, Theorem 2.1] (the main result of the paper), but we show that it follows as a direct consequence of Proposition 8.9.

Corollary 8.10. *Let $i \in I_0$ and $m_1 > m_2 \geq 0$. Then there exists an embedding of $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules*

$$\mathtt{KR}(m_2\varpi_i) \otimes \mathtt{KR}(m_1\varpi_i) \rightarrowtail \mathtt{KR}((m_2+1)\varpi_i) \otimes \mathtt{KR}((m_1-1)\varpi_i). \tag{8.7}$$

As a consequence of the above corollary, we can obtain the following as explained in [FH14].

Theorem 8.11 ([FH14, Theorem 2.1])**.** *Let $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$, $i \in I_0$ and $\boldsymbol{\lambda} \preceq^{\mathbf{r}} \boldsymbol{\mu} \in \mathcal{P}(k)$. Then we have*

$$\dim\big(\mathrm{Hom}_{U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)}(\mathtt{KR}(\boldsymbol{\lambda}, i), V(\tau))\big) \leq \dim\big(\mathrm{Hom}_{U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)}(\mathtt{KR}(\boldsymbol{\mu}, i), V(\tau))\big)$$

for all $\tau \in P_0^+$. Here $V(\tau)$ denotes the highest weight $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-module corresponding to τ.

Remark 8.12. When $i \in I_0$ is special, Equation (8.7) can be expressed as

$$\mathcal{S}_{i^{(m_1-1)}}\mathcal{S}_{i^{(m_2+1)}} - \mathcal{S}_{i^{m_1}}\mathcal{S}_{i^{m_2}} = \sum_{\tau \in P_0^+} c_\tau \mathcal{S}_\tau \quad (c_\tau \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}), \tag{8.8}$$

where $\mathcal{S}_\tau$ denotes the character of $V(\tau)$. Thus (8.7) implies that the difference of the products of characters is positive in the character basis.

Now let us consider a partition

$$\boldsymbol{\lambda} = \big(\lambda_1 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_r > 0\big) \text{ of } k \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1},$$

and fix $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$. Then we assume $|I_0| \geq \lambda_1$. Then we define

$$\mathtt{KR}(m, \boldsymbol{\lambda}) := \mathtt{KR}(m\varpi_{\lambda_1}) \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathtt{KR}(m\varpi_{\lambda_r}).$$

Here we understand $\mathtt{KR}(m\varpi_0)$ as the trivial module. Then as a direct consequence of Theorem 8.2 and Theorem 8.6 we obtain the followings.

Proposition 8.13. *Let $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$ and $n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)}) > \lambda_1 > \lambda_2 \geq 0$. Then there exists an embedding of $U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)$-modules*

$$\mathtt{KR}(m\varpi_{\lambda_2}) \otimes \mathtt{KR}(m\varpi_{\lambda_1}) \rightarrowtail \mathtt{KR}(m\varpi_{\lambda_2+1}) \otimes \mathtt{KR}(m\varpi_{\lambda_1-1}). \tag{8.9}$$

Theorem 8.14. *Let $m, k \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$ and $\boldsymbol{\lambda} \preceq^{\mathbf{r}} \boldsymbol{\mu} \in \mathcal{P}(k)$ with $\lambda_1 < n - \delta(\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)})$. Then we have*

$$\dim\big(\mathrm{Hom}_{U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)}(\mathtt{KR}(m, \boldsymbol{\lambda}), V(\tau))\big) \leq \dim\big(\mathrm{Hom}_{U_q(\mathfrak{g}_0)}(\mathtt{KR}(m, \boldsymbol{\mu}), V(\tau))\big)$$

for all $\tau \in P_0^+$.

Remark 8.15. Let us consider when $\mathfrak{g} = A^{(1)}_{n-1}$. In this case, every $\lambda \in I_0$ is special. Hence (8.9) can be expressed as

$$\mathcal{S}_{(\lambda_1-1)^m}\mathcal{S}_{(\lambda_2+1)^m} - \mathcal{S}_{\lambda_1^m}\mathcal{S}_{\lambda_2^m} = \sum_{\tau \in P_0^+} c_\tau \mathcal{S}_\tau \quad (c_\tau \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}). \tag{8.10}$$

Equation (8.10) can be obtained by applying the ω involution to (8.8) for $i = m$ and $m_s = \lambda_s$ $(s = 1, 2)$. It also can be obtained from a particular case of [LPP07, Theorem 5].

8.3. **Application to quiver Hecke algebras.** The representation theory of quantum affine algebra $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ in closely related to the ones of quiver Hecke algebra $\mathcal{R}$ of type $\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}$. The quiver Hecke algebra $\mathcal{R}$ is introduced by Khovanov–Lauda [KL09] and Rouquier [Rou08] independently, which is $\mathbb{Z}$-graded and categorifies the negative half of quantum group $U_q^-(\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin})$; i.e.,

$$\mathbb{Q}(q) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[q,q^{-1}]} K(\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}\text{-gmod}) \simeq U_q^-(\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}),$$

where $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}$-gmod denotes the category of finite dimensional graded $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}$-modules. Here $\mathbb{Z}[q, q^{-1}]$-module structure on the Grothendieck group $K(\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}\text{-gmod})$ is induced by the degree shift functor q and the ring structure on $K(\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}\text{-gmod})$ is induced by the *convolution product* $\circ$.

In [KKK18, KKK15], Kang–Kashiwara–Kim constructed a generalized Schur–Weyl functor

$$\mathcal{F}^{(1)}_{\mathcal{Q}} \colon \mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}\text{-gmod} \to \mathscr{C}^{(1)}_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

for each Q-datum $\mathcal{Q}$ of $\mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g})$ of untwisted affine type $A^{(1)}_n$ and $D^{(1)}_n$, which is monoidal and sends simple modules in $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}$-gmod to simple modules in $\mathscr{C}^{(1)}_{\mathcal{Q}}$ bijectively. The result is extended to twisted affine type and exceptional type in [KKKO16, KO18, OS19b]:

$$\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}} \colon \mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}\text{-gmod} \to \mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}} \qquad \text{for } \textit{any} \text{ quantum affine algebra } \mathcal{U}_q(\mathfrak{g}).$$

Later, it is proved in [Fuj22a, Nao21] that the categories $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}$-gmod and $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}$ are equivalent. Thus our result among KR modules in $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}$ can be translated into the relationship between their corresponding modules in $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}$-gmod. Those modules are refereed to as *determinantial modules adapted to $\mathcal{Q}$*. Furthermore, in [KKOP24c], it is proved that the $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants are preserved by $\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}$, where $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants in $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}$-gmod is defined also by the R-matrices (see [KKKO15a] for more detail).

Using the higher Dorey's rule, we have homomorphisms among determinantial modules adapted to $\mathcal{Q}$ in $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}$-gmod.

Theorem 8.16. *The higher Dorey's for $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}$-gmod holds. Namely, if there exists a homomorphism*

$$V_1 \otimes V_2 \twoheadrightarrow \bigotimes_{j \in J} W_j \quad \text{in } \mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

for KR modules V_u $(u = 1, 2)$ and W_j $(j \in J)$, there exists a homomorphism

$$\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{-1}(V_1) \circ \mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{-1}(V_2) \twoheadrightarrow \mathop{\circ}_{j \in J} \mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{-1}(W_j) \quad \text{in } \mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}\text{-gmod}.$$

Furthermore, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(V_1, V_2) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{-1}(V_1), \mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{-1}(V_2)).$$

Remark 8.17. In [VV11, Rou12], it was proved that the dual canonical/upper global basis $\mathbb{B}$ of $U_q^-(\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin})$ is categorified by the set of simple modules in $\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\rm fin}}$-gmod. In particular, the simple modules corresponding to KR modules under $\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}$ categorify the quantum unipotent minors associated with a $\mathcal{Q}$-datum and i-boxes. Hence, the higher Dorey's rule in Theorem 8.16 can be interpreted in terms of the multiplication structure of $\mathbb{B}$. More precisely, by Leclerc's conjecture, now established as a theorem in [KKKO18, §4], Theorem 8.16 asserts that for elements (equivalently, quantum minors) $\mathbf{b}_i \in \mathbb{B}$ $(i = 1, 2)$ corresponding to $\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{-1}(V_i)$, the element (equivalently, (product of) quantum minor(s)) $\mathbf{b}' \in \mathbb{B}$

corresponding to $\mathop{\circ}_{j\in J}\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{-1}(W_j)$ appears with multiplicity q^m in the expansion of $\mathbf{b}_1\mathbf{b}_2$ with respect to $\mathbb{B}$, satisfying

$$\mathbf{b}_1\mathbf{b}_2 \;=\; q^m\mathbf{b}' \;+\; q^s\mathbf{b}'' \;+\; \sum_{\mathbf{b}\neq\mathbf{b}'}\gamma^{\mathbf{c}}_{\mathbf{b}_1,\mathbf{b}_2}(q)\,\mathbf{c},$$

where $m<s$ and $\gamma^{\mathbf{c}}_{\mathbf{b}_1,\mathbf{b}_2}(q)\in q^{m+1}\mathbb{Z}[q]\cap q^{s-1}\mathbb{Z}[q^{-1}]$. Here, $\mathbf{b}''$ denotes the element of $\mathbb{B}$ corresponding to the socle $\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{-1}(V_1)\,\Delta\,\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}}^{-1}(V_2)$.

8.4. **Relations among non KR modules.** In [KKO19], exact monoidal functors $(t=1,2)$

$$\mathcal{F}_{A\to B}\colon \mathscr{C}^0_{A^{(t)}_{2n-1}} \to \mathscr{C}^0_{B^{(1)}_n}, \qquad\qquad \mathcal{F}_{B\to A}\colon \mathscr{C}^0_{B^{(1)}_n} \to \mathscr{C}^0_{A^{(t)}_{2n-1}}$$

are constructed that send simple modules to simple modules bijectively thorough the relationship among $\mathcal{R}^{A_\infty}$-gmod, $\mathscr{C}^0_{A^{(t)}_{2n-1}}$, and $\mathscr{C}^0_{B^{(1)}_n}$. In contrast to the other Schur–Weyl duality functors discussed earlier, the functors $\mathcal{F}_{A\leftrightarrow B}$ do *not* preserve KR modules; in fact, they do not even preserve the fundamental modules (see [KKO19, Section 3] and [HO19, Section 12]). Therefore, the higher Dorey's rule and the generalized T-system in this paper yields an interesting relations between modules, which in general are *not* KR modules, in the categories $\mathscr{C}^0_{A^{(t)}_{2n-1}}$ and $\mathscr{C}^0_{B^{(1)}_n}$.

Corollary 8.18. *Let* $\{X^{(1)},Y^{(1)}\}=\{A^{(t)}_{2n-1},B^{(1)}_n\}$ $(t=1,2)$. *For each higher Dorey's rule*

$$V_1\otimes V_2 \twoheadrightarrow \bigotimes_{j\in J} W_j \quad \text{in } \mathscr{C}^0_{X^{(1)}}$$

with KR modules V_u $(u=1,2)$ *and* W_j $(j\in J)$, *there exists a homomorphism in* $\mathscr{C}^0_{Y^{(1)}}$

$$\mathcal{F}_{X\to Y}(V_1)\otimes\mathcal{F}_{X\to Y}(V_2)\twoheadrightarrow \bigotimes_{j\in J}\mathcal{F}_{X\to Y}(W_j),$$

where $\mathcal{F}_{X\to Y}(V_i)$ $(i=1,2)$ *and* $\mathcal{F}_{X\to Y}(W_j)$ *are not KR modules in general.*

As seen in the previous section, for Q-data $\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}=(\triangle^{\langle 1\rangle},\xi^{\langle 1\rangle},\sigma^{\langle 1\rangle})$ and $\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}=(\triangle^{\langle 2\rangle},\xi^{\langle 2\rangle},\sigma^{\langle 2\rangle})$ with $\triangle^{\langle 1\rangle}=\triangle^{\langle 2\rangle}$ of $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}$-type, we have functors

$$\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle i\rangle}}\colon\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle i\rangle}}\to\mathcal{R}^{\mathfrak{g}_{\mathrm{fin}}}\text{-gmod},$$

which in turn induce a functor

$$\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}\to\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}}\colon\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}}\to\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}},$$

sending simple modules to simple modules bijectively. However, this functor does *not* preserve KR modules either. With this observation, we arrive at the following result:

Corollary 8.19. *Let* $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}}$ *and* $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}}$ *be the heart subcategories of* $\mathscr{C}^0_{\mathfrak{g}_1}$ *and* $\mathscr{C}^0_{\mathfrak{g}_2}$, *where* $\mathfrak{g}_1$ *and* $\mathfrak{g}_2$ *are possibly different but have the requirement* $\triangle^{\langle 1\rangle}=\triangle^{\langle 2\rangle}$. *For each higher Dorey's rule*

$$V_1\otimes V_2\twoheadrightarrow\bigotimes_{j\in J}W_j \qquad \text{in } \mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}}$$

with KR modules V_u $(u=1,2)$ *and* W_j $(j\in J)$, *there exists a homomorphism in* $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}}$

$$\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}\to\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}}(V_1)\otimes\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}\to\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}}(V_2)\twoheadrightarrow\bigotimes_{j\in J}\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}\to\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}}(W_j).$$

Furthermore, we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(V_1,V_2)=\mathfrak{d}(\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}\to\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}}(V_1),\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}\to\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}}(V_2)).$$

Let us again emphasize that $\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}\to\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}}(V_i)$ $(i=1,2)$ and $\mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 1\rangle}\to\mathcal{Q}^{\langle 2\rangle}}(W_j)$ $(j\in J)$ in Corollary 8.19 are not KR modules in general. Note that the restriction of $\mathcal{F}_{A\leftrightarrow B}$ to the heart subcategories $\mathscr{C}_Q$ (resp. $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}$) does *not* coincide with $\mathcal{F}_{Q\leftrightarrow\mathcal{Q}}$ when $\mathscr{C}_Q$ is of type $A^{(1)}_{2n-1}$ and $\mathscr{C}_{\mathcal{Q}}$ is of type $B^{(1)}_n$.

Appendix A. Resolving the ambiguities in the $C_n^{(1)}$ case

In this appendix, we show that in type $C_n^{(1)}$, the ambiguities in the multiplicities of roots can be resolved in certain cases, by applying auxiliary techniques that are not used in the main body of the paper.

Let us consider the case of $d_{2^3,2^5}(z)$ for type $C_3^{(1)}$. The conjectural formula is

$$(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{14})(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{12})^2(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{10})^3(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{8})^3(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{6})^2(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{4}),$$

while (7.65) guarantees

$$(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{14})(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{12})^2(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{10})^{2+\epsilon_{10}}(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{8})^{2+\epsilon_8}(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{6})^{1+\epsilon_6}(z-q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{4}), \tag{A.1}$$

where $\epsilon_t \in \{0,1\}$.

We first prove that the multiplicity of the root $q_{\mathfrak{s}}^6$ (resp. $q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{10}$) is 2 (resp. 3), as conjectured. Take $V_1 = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^3})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}}$ and $V_2 = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^5})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{5}}$. Then by the block decomposition in [KKOP22b] (see also [CM05]), we have

$$\Lambda^\infty(V_1,V_2)=4.$$

On the other hand, Proposition 2.11(iv) gives

$$\Lambda^\infty(V_1,V_2)=1+\epsilon_6-1+2+\epsilon_{10}$$

from (A.1). This confirms that $\epsilon_6=1$ and $\epsilon_{10}=1$, so the multiplicities at $q_{\mathfrak{s}}^6$ and $q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{10}$ are 2 and 3, respectively.

Finally, we determine the multiplicity at $q_{\mathfrak{s}}^8$. Taking $V_1 = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^3})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}}$ and $V_2 = \mathtt{V}(\boxed{2^7})_{(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{7}}$, we obtain

$$\Lambda^\infty(V_1,V_2)=6=4+2\epsilon_8,$$

as in the previous case. Hence $\epsilon_8=1$, so the multiplicity at $q_{\mathfrak{s}}^8$ is 3.

Therefore, all ambiguities in $d_{2^3,2^5}(z)$ for type $C_3^{(1)}$ are removed.

Appendix B. Extended T-systems and the $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants

In this appendix, we generalize the extended T-system in [MY12] for $A_{n-1}^{(1)}$ and $B_n^{(1)}$, in [LM13] for $G_2^{(1)}$, and [Li15] for $C_3^{(1)}$ further using $\mathfrak{d}$-invariants between KR modules. We basically employ the frameworks of [KKOP24b] and [Nao24] and consider every affine type.

Recall the compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$ of $\widehat{\blacktriangle}_0$, Convention 1.4 and its fundamental module $\mathfrak{R}[a]$ in §3.2. Let us fix the compatible reading $\mathfrak{R}$ of $\widehat{\blacktriangle}_0$ of *any* classical affine type $\mathfrak{g}$. Then let us take a subsequence

$$\boldsymbol{k}=(k_1<k_2<\cdots<k_p) \text{ of } \mathfrak{R}$$

and define

$$\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{k}}[a,b]:=\mathrm{hd}(\mathfrak{R}[k_b]\otimes\mathfrak{R}[k_{b-1}]\otimes\cdots\otimes\mathfrak{R}[k_a])$$

for any sub-interval $[a,b]\subseteq[1,p]$. Since the sequence of fundamental modules $(\mathfrak{R}[k_b],\mathfrak{R}[k_{b-1}],\dots,\mathfrak{R}[k_a])$ are strongly unmixed, and hence normal, $\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{k}}[a,b]$ is simple by Lemma 2.15.

Now let us recall the one of the main theorems in [Nao24]:

Theorem B.1 ([Nao24, Proposition 4.1.1, Theorem 4.2.1]). *Assume $p\geq 2$ and both of the following two conditions are satisfied:*

(a) *for any $1\leq a<b\leq p$, we have $\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[k_a],\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{k}}[a+1,b])=1$, and*
(b) *for any $1\leq a<b\leq p$, we have $\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[k_b],\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{k}}[a,b-1])=1$.*

Then $\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{k}}[a,b]$ is a prime real simple module and there exists a short exact sequence

$$0\to\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{k}}[1,p]\otimes\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{k}}[2,p-1]\to\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{k}}[1,p-1]\otimes\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{k}}[2,p]\to\mathrm{hd}\left(\overleftarrow{\bigotimes_{1\leq a<p}}\mathfrak{R}[k_a]\nabla\mathfrak{R}[k_{a+1}]\right)\to 0.$$

Now let us take

$$\widetilde{\boldsymbol{k}} = (\widetilde{k}_1 < \widetilde{k}_2 < \cdots < \widetilde{k}_p) \text{ of } \mathfrak{R}$$

such that

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_s], \mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_{s+1}]) = 1 \text{ for } 1 \le s < p \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_s], \mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_{s+t}]) = 0 \text{ for } t > 1. \tag{B.1}$$

Note that the following lemma and corollary holds for an *arbitrary* quantum affine algebra (cf. [Nao24]).

Proposition B.2. *The conditions in Theorem B.1 holds for* $\widetilde{\boldsymbol{k}}$. *In particular, the simple module* $\mathbb{S}_{\widetilde{\boldsymbol{k}}}[a,b]$ *is prime and real.*

Proof. (a) Note that

$$0 \le \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_a], \mathbb{S}_{\widetilde{\boldsymbol{k}}}[a+1,b]) \le \sum_{s=a+1}^{b} \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_a], \mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_s]) = 1$$

$$0 \le \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_a], \mathbb{S}_{\widetilde{\boldsymbol{k}}}[a+2,b]) \le \sum_{s=a+2}^{b} \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_a], \mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_s]) = 0$$

by Proposition 2.6 and Proposition 2.9. On the other hand,

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^{-1}\mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_a], \mathbb{S}_{\widetilde{\boldsymbol{k}}}[a+2,b]) = 0$$

by the unmixed property and Proposition 2.9. Hence Lemma 2.12(ii) implies

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_a], \mathbb{S}_{\widetilde{\boldsymbol{k}}}[a+1,b]) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_a], \mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_{a+1}]) = 1.$$

Similarly, (b) holds. □

Corollary B.3. *We have a short exact sequence*

$$0 \to \mathbb{S}_{\widetilde{\boldsymbol{k}}}[1,p] \otimes \mathbb{S}_{\widetilde{\boldsymbol{k}}}[2,p-1] \to \mathbb{S}_{\widetilde{\boldsymbol{k}}}[1,p-1] \otimes \mathbb{S}_{\widetilde{\boldsymbol{k}}}[2,p] \to \mathrm{hd}\left(\overrightarrow{\bigotimes_{1 \le a < p}} \mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_a] \nabla \mathfrak{R}[\widetilde{k}_{a+1}] \right) \to 0. \tag{B.2}$$

Let us take a sequence of i-boxes

$$\boldsymbol{c} = (\mathfrak{c}_1, \mathfrak{c}_2, \dots, \mathfrak{c}_p) \tag{B.3}$$

such that

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathscr{D}^u \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_s), \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_{s+t})) \le^{\dagger} \delta(t=1)\delta(u=0) \quad \text{for } 1 \le s < p,\ t > 1 \text{ and } u \in \{0,-1\}. \tag{B.4}$$

Note that each $\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_s)$ is a KR module and the sequence

$$(\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_p), \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_{p-1}), \dots, \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_1)) \text{ is normal.}$$

Hence

$$\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[a,b] := \mathrm{hd}(\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_b) \otimes \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_{b-1}) \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_a)) \tag{B.5}$$

is simple for any sub-interval $[a,b] \subseteq [1,p]$.

Proposition B.4.

(a) *For* $1 \le a < b \le p$, *we have* $\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_a), \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[a+1,b]) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_b), \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[a,b-1]) \le^{\star} 1$. *In particular, if* $\le^{\dagger}$ *in* (B.4) *is always an equality, then* $\le^{\star}$ *is also an equality.*
(b) *If* $[a',b'] \subseteq [a,b]$, *then* $\mathfrak{d}(\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[a',b'], \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[a,b]) = 0$.
(c) $\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[a,b]$ *is real.*

Proof. The proof of (a) is the same as the proof of Proposition B.2. Let us focus on (b). First assume that $[a',b'] = [c]$ for some $a \le c \le b$. By the assumption on $\boldsymbol{c}$, Proposition 2.13 implies that

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_c), \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[a,b]) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_c), \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[c+1,b] \nabla \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_c)) + \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_c), \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_c) \nabla \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[a,c-1]).$$

By Lemma 2.14 and (a), we have

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_c), \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[c+1,b] \nabla \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_c)) = \mathfrak{d}(\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_c), \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_c) \nabla \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[a,c-1]) = 0$$

and hence the assertion for $[c]$ follows. Then the assertion for $[a',b']$ directly follows from Proposition 2.9. The third assertion is obvious. □

Lemma B.5.

(a) *We have* $\mathfrak{d}(\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[1,p-1], \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[2,p]) \le 1$.
(b) *We have* $\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[1,p-1] \,\Delta\, \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[2,p] \simeq \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[1,p] \otimes \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[2,p-1]$.

Proof. (a) follows from Proposition 2.9. Thus let us focus on (b). Note that we have a non-zero composition of homomorphisms

$$\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[2,p] \otimes \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[1,p-1] \rightarrowtail \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[2,p-1] \otimes \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{c}_p) \otimes \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[1,p-1] \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[2,p-1] \otimes \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[1,p],$$

by Proposition 2.3. Then the assertion follows from the fact that $\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[2,p-1] \otimes \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[1,p]$ is simple. □

Problem B.6. *It would be interesting to find an additional condition on* $\boldsymbol{c}$ *that implies*

$$\mathfrak{d}(\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[1,p-1], \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[2,p]) = 1, \tag{B.6}$$

and hence the existence of short exact sequence whose socle is isomorphic to $\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[1,p] \otimes \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[2,p-1]$.

For instance, when we choose each $\mathfrak{c}_s = [\widetilde{k}_s]$ as (B.1), it implies $\mathfrak{d}(\mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[1,p-1], \mathbb{S}_{\boldsymbol{c}}[2,p]) = 1$ and (B.2).

Appendix C. Classical T-systems

The T-system among the KR modules over untwisted quantum affine algebras can be presented in terms of $\mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^m}\big)_{a'}$ as follows: $(a \in \mathbf{k}^\times)$

Type $ADE_n^{(1)}$:

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{m+1}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^m}\big)_{a(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^m}\big)_{a(-q)} \to \bigotimes_{\substack{j \in I_0 \\ a_{ij}=-1}} \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{j^m}\big)_a \to 0.$$

Type $B_n^{(1)}$: For $1 \le i \le n-2$:

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{m+1}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^m}\big)_{a(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^m}\big)_{a(-q)} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(i-1)^m}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(i+1)^m}\big)_a \to 0.$$

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m+1}}\big)_a &\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{a(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{a(-q)} \\ &\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^m}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^m a} \to 0. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m+1}}\big)_a &\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathsf{s}})} \\ &\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-1)^m a q_{\mathsf{s}}^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-1)^{m+1} a q_{\mathsf{s}}} \to 0. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m+2}}\big)_a &\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m+1}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{2m+1}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathsf{s}})} \\ &\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{m+1}}\big)_{(-1)^m a} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^m}\big)_{(-1)^{m+1} a} \to 0. \end{aligned}$$

Type $C_n^{(1)}$: For $1 \le i \le n-2$

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^{m+1}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^m}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{i^m}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathsf{s}})} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(i-1)^m}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(i+1)^m}\big)_a \to 0.$$

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m+1}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})}$$
$$\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^m a(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^m a(q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \to 0.$$

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m+2}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m+1}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m+1}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})}$$
$$\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-2)^{2m+1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m+1}}\big)_{(-1)^m a} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{(-1)^m a} \to 0.$$

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^{m+1}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{a(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{n^m}\big)_{a(-q)} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{(n-1)^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^{1+k}a} \to 0.$$

Type $F_4^{(1)}$:

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m+1}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{a(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{a(-q)} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^m}\big)_a \to 0.$$

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{m+1}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^m}\big)_{a(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^m}\big)_{a(-q)} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{3^{2m}}\big)_{(-1)^{1+k}a} \to 0.$$

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{3^{2m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{3^{2m+1}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{3^{2m}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{3^{2m}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})}$$
$$\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^m}\big)_{(-1)^r a q_{\mathfrak{s}}^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^m}\big)_{(-1)^r a q_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{4^{2m}}\big)_a \to 0.$$

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{3^{2m}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{3^{2m+2}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{3^{2m+1}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{3^{2m+1}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})}$$
$$\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{m+1}}\big)_{(-1)^r a} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^m}\big)_{(-1)^{m-1} a} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{4^{2m+1}}\big)_a \to 0.$$

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{4^{m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{4^{m+1}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{4^m}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{4^m}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{3^m}\big)_a \to 0.$$

Type $G_2^{(1)}$:

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m+1}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{a(-q)^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{a(-q)} \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m}}\big)_a \to 0.$$

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m-1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m+1}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})}$$
$$\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})^{-2}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})^2} \to 0.$$

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m+2}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m+1}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m+1}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})}$$
$$\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m+1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})} \to 0.$$

$$0 \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m+1}}\big)_a \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m+3}}\big)_a \to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m+2}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{2^{3m+2}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})}$$
$$\to \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m+1}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})^{-1}} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^{m+1}}\big)_{a(-q_{\mathfrak{t}})} \otimes \mathtt{V}\big(\boxed{1^m}\big)_a \to 0.$$

Appendix D. Universal coefficients between fundamentals for non-exceptional types

Type	n	k,l	universal coefficients	p^*
$A_{n-1}^{(1)}$	$n\geq 1$	$1\leq k,l\leq n-1$	$a_{k,l}(z)\equiv\dfrac{[\lvert k-l\rvert][2n-\lvert k-l\rvert]}{[k+l][2n-k-l]}$	$(-q)^n$
$B_n^{(1)}$	$n\geq 3$	$1\leq k,l\leq n-1$	$a_{k,l}(z)\equiv\dfrac{[\lvert k-l\rvert]\,\langle 2n+k+l-1]\,\langle 2n-k-l-1]\,[4n-\lvert k-l\rvert-2]}{[k+l]\,\langle 2n+k-l-1]\,\langle 2n-k+l-1]\,[4n-k-l-2]}$	$-(-q)^{2n-1}$
$q_s^2=q$		$1\leq k\leq n-1$	$a_{k,n}(z)\equiv\dfrac{{}_s[2n-2k-1]_{(n+k)}\,{}_s[6n+2k-3]_{(n+k)}}{{}_s[2n+2k-1]_{(n+k)}\,{}_s[6n-2k-3]_{(n+k)}}$	
		$k=l=n$	$a_{n,n}(z)\equiv\prod_{s=1}^{n}\dfrac{[2n+2s-2][2s-2]}{\langle 2s-1]\,\langle 2n-3+2s]}$	
$C_n^{(1)}$	$n\geq 2$	$1\leq k,l\leq n$	$a_{k,l}(z)\equiv\dfrac{{}_s[\lvert k-l\rvert]\,{}_s[2n+2-k-l]\,{}_s[2n+2+k+l]\,{}_s[4n+4-\lvert k-l\rvert]}{{}_s[k+l]\,{}_s[2n+2-k+l]\,{}_s[2n+2+k-l]\,{}_s[4n+4-k-l]}$	$(-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2}$
$D_n^{(1)}$	$n\geq 4$	$1\leq k,l\leq n-2$	$a_{k,l}(z)\equiv\dfrac{[\lvert k-l\rvert][2n+k+l-2][2n-k-l-2][4n-\lvert k-l\rvert-4]}{[k+l][2n+k-l-2][2n-k+l-2][4n-k-l-4]}$	$(-q)^{2n-2}$
		$1\leq k\leq n-2$	$a_{k,n-1}(z)=a_{k,n}(z)\equiv\dfrac{[n-k-1][3n+k-3]}{[n+k-1][3n-k-3]}$	
		$\{k,l\}=\{n,n-1\}$	$a_{n,n-1}(z)=a_{n-1,n}(z)\equiv\dfrac{\prod_{s=1}^{n-1}[4s-2]}{[2n-2]\prod_{s=1}^{n-2}[4s]}$	
		$k=l\in\{n,n-1\}$	$a_{n,n}(z)=a_{n-1,n-1}(z)\equiv\dfrac{\prod_{s=0}^{n-1}[4s]}{[2n-2]\prod_{s=1}^{n-1}[4s-2]}$	
$A_{2n-1}^{(2)}$	$n\geq 3$	$1\leq k,l\leq n$	$a_{k,l}(z)\equiv\dfrac{[\lvert k-l\rvert][4n-\lvert k-l\rvert]\,\langle 2n+k+l]\,\langle 2n-k-l]}{[k+l][4n-k-l]\,\langle 2n+\lvert k-l\rvert]\,\langle 2n-\lvert k-l\rvert]}$	$-(-q)^{2n}$
$A_{2n}^{(2)}$	$n\geq 1$	$1\leq k,l\leq n$	$a_{k,l}(z)\equiv\dfrac{[\lvert k-l\rvert][4n+2-\lvert k-l\rvert][2n+1+k+l][2n+1-k-l]}{[k+l][4n+2-k-l][2n+1+\lvert k-l\rvert][2n+1-\lvert k-l\rvert]}$	$(-q)^{2n+1}$
$D_{n+1}^{(2)}$	$n\geq 2$	$1\leq k,l\leq n-1$	$a_{k,l}(z)\equiv\dfrac{{}^{(2)}\langle\!\langle \lvert\frac{k-l}{2}\rvert\rrbracket\,{}^{(2)}\langle\!\langle 2n-\lvert\frac{k-l}{2}\rvert\rrbracket\,{}^{(2)}\langle\!\langle n+\frac{k+l}{2}\rrbracket\,{}^{(2)}\langle\!\langle n-\frac{k+l}{2}\rrbracket}{{}^{(2)}\langle\!\langle \frac{k+l}{2}\rrbracket\,{}^{(2)}\langle\!\langle 2n-\frac{k+l}{2}\rrbracket\,{}^{(2)}\langle\!\langle n+\lvert\frac{k-l}{2}\rvert\rrbracket\,{}^{(2)}\langle\!\langle n-\lvert\frac{k-l}{2}\rvert\rrbracket}$	$-(-q^2)^n$
		$1\leq k\leq n-1$	$a_{k,n}(z)\equiv\dfrac{{}^{(2)}\llbracket\frac{3n+k}{2}\rrbracket'\,{}^{(2)}\llbracket\frac{n-k}{2}\rrbracket'}{{}^{(2)}\llbracket\frac{3n-k}{2}\rrbracket'\,{}^{(2)}\llbracket\frac{n+k}{2}\rrbracket'}$	
		$k=l=n$	$a_{n,n}(z)\equiv\prod_{s=1}^{n}\dfrac{{}^{(2)}[n+s]\,{}^{(2)}[n-s]}{{}^{(2)}\langle s]\,{}^{(2)}\langle 2n-s]}$	

Here

(a) ${}^{(2)}[a]=((-q^2)^a z;p^{*2})_\infty$,
(b) ${}^{(2)}\langle a]=(-(-q^2)^a z;p^{*2})_\infty$,
(c) ${}^{(2)}\langle\!\langle a\rrbracket=((-q^2)^a z;p^{*2})_\infty\times(-(-q^2)^a z;p^{*2})_\infty$,
(d) ${}^{(2)}\llbracket a\rrbracket'=(i(-q^2)^a z;p^{*2})_\infty\times(-i(-q^2)^a z;p^{*2})_\infty$.

Appendix E. Denominator formulas for fundamentals modules in non-exceptional types

E.1. Denominator formulas between fundamental modules except $E_n^{(1)}$ and $F_4^{(1)}$.

Type	n	k,l	Denominators
$A_{n-1}^{(1)}$	$n \geq 2$	$1 \leq k,l \leq n$	$d_{k,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l,n-k,n-l)} \big(z - (-q)^{2s+\lvert k-l\rvert}\big)$
$B_n^{(1)}$	$n \geq 3$	$1 \leq k,l \leq n-1$	$d_{k,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} \big(z - (-q)^{\lvert k-l\rvert+2s}\big)\big(z + (-q)^{2n-k-l-1+2s}\big)$
$q_{\mathsf{s}}^2 = q$		$1 \leq k \leq n-1$	$d_{k,n}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{k} \big(z - (-1)^{n+k} q_{\mathsf{s}}^{2n-2k-1+4s}\big)$
		$k = l = n$	$d_{n,n}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n} \big(z - (q_{\mathsf{s}})^{4s-2}\big)$
$C_n^{(1)}$	$n \geq 2$	$1 \leq k,l \leq n$	$d_{k,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l,n-k,n-l)} \big(z - (-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{\lvert k-l\rvert+2s}\big) \prod_{i=1}^{\min(k,l)} \big(z - (-q_{\mathsf{s}})^{2n+2-k-l+2s}\big)$
$D_n^{(1)}$	$n \geq 4$	$1 \leq k,l \leq n-2$	$d_{k,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} \big(z - (-q)^{\lvert k-l\rvert+2s}\big)\big(z - (-q)^{2n-2-k-l+2s}\big)$
		$1 \leq k \leq n-2$	$d_{k,n-1}(z) = d_{k,n}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{k} \big(z - (-q)^{n-k-1+2s}\big)$
		$\{k,l\} = \{n, n-1\}$	$d_{n,n-1}(z) = d_{n-1,n}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor \frac{n-1}{2} \rfloor} \big(z - (-q)^{4s}\big)$
		$k = l \in \{n, n-1\}$	$d_{n,n}(z) = d_{n-1,n-1}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \big(z - (-q)^{4s-2}\big)$
$A_{2n-1}^{(2)}$	$n \geq 3$	$1 \leq k,l \leq n$	$d_{k,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} \big(z - (-q)^{\lvert k-l\rvert+2s}\big)\big(z + (-q)^{2n-k-l+2s}\big)$
$A_{2n}^{(2)}$	$n \geq 1$	$1 \leq k,l \leq n$	$d_{k,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} \big(z - (-q)^{\lvert k-l\rvert+2s}\big)\big(z - (-q)^{2n+1-k-l+2s}\big)$
$D_{n+1}^{(2)}$	$n \geq 2$	$1 \leq k,l \leq n-1$	$d_{k,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} \big(z^2 - (-q^2)^{\lvert k-l\rvert+2s}\big)\big(z^2 - (-q^2)^{2n-k-l+2s}\big)$
		$1 \leq k \leq n-1$	$d_{k,n}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{k} \big(z^2 + (-q^2)^{n-k+2s}\big)$
		$k = l = n$	$d_{n,n}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{n} \big(z + (-q^2)^{s}\big)$
$D_4^{(3)}$		$\omega^3 = 1$	$d_{1,1}(z) = (z-q^2)(z-q^6)(z-\omega q^4)(z-\omega^2 q^4)$ $d_{1,2}(z) = (z^3+q^9)(z^3+q^{15})$ $d_{2,2}(z) = (z^3-q^6)(z^3-q^{12})^2(z^3-q^{18})$
$G_2^{(1)}$		$q_{\mathsf{t}}^3 = q$	$d_{1,1}(z) = (z-q_{\mathsf{t}}^6)(z-q_{\mathsf{t}}^8)(z-q_{\mathsf{t}}^{10})(z-q_{\mathsf{t}}^{12})$ $d_{1,2}(z) = (z+q_{\mathsf{t}}^7)(z+q_{\mathsf{t}}^{11})$ $d_{2,2}(z) = (z-q_{\mathsf{t}}^2)(z-q_{\mathsf{t}}^8)(z-q_{\mathsf{t}}^{12})$

E.2. **Denominator formulas between KR modules except $E_n^{(1)}$, $F_4^{(1)}$ and $G_2^{(1)}$.**

Type	n, m, p	k, l	Denominators
$A_n^{(1)}$	$n \geq 1$	$1 \leq k, l \leq n$	$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l,n-k,n-l)} \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1} \left(z - (-q)^{\lvert k-l\rvert+\lvert p-m\rvert+2(s+t)}\right)$
$B_n^{(1)}$	$n \geq 3$	$1 \leq k, l \leq n-1$	$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z - (-q)^{\lvert k-l\rvert+\lvert m-p\rvert+2(s+t)})(z + (-q)^{2n-k-l+\lvert m-p\rvert-1+2(s+t)})$
$q_{\mathfrak{s}}^2 = q$		$1 \leq l \leq n-1$	$d_{l^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(2p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} \left(z - (-1)^{n+l+p+m}(q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n-2l-2+\lvert 2p-m\rvert+4s+2t}\right)$
		$k = l = n$	$d_{n^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{n} \left(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{4s+2t-2+\lvert p-m\rvert}\right)$
$C_n^{(1)}$	$n \geq 2$	$1 \leq k, l \leq n$	$d_{k,l}(z) = \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l,n-k,n-l)} \left(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{\lvert k-l\rvert+2s}\right) \prod_{i=1}^{\min(k,l)} \left(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k-l+2s}\right)$
	$\max(m, p) \geq 2$	$1 \leq k, l < n$	$d_{l^p,k^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} \left(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{\lvert k-l\rvert+\lvert m-p\rvert+2s+2t}\right)\left(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2n+2-k-l+\lvert m-p\rvert+2s+2t}\right)$
		$1 \leq l < n$	$d_{l^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,2m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} \left(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{n+1-l+\lvert 2m-p\rvert+2s+2t}\right)$
		$k = l = n$	$d_{n^p,n^m} = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{n} \left(z - (-q_{\mathfrak{s}})^{2+\lvert 2m-2p\rvert+2s+4t}\right)$
$D_n^{(1)}$	$n \geq 4$	$1 \leq k, l \leq n-2$	$d_{l^p,k^m} = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(m,p)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\min(k,l)} (z - (-q)^{\lvert k-l\rvert+\lvert m-p\rvert+2(s+t)})(z - (-q)^{2n-k-l+\lvert m-p\rvert-2+2(s+t)})$
		$1 \leq k \leq n-2$	$d_{l^p,n^m}(z) = d_{l^p,(n-1)^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{l} (z - (-q)^{n-l-1+\lvert p-m\rvert+2(s+t)})$
		$\{k, l\} = \{n, n-1\}$	$d_{(n-1)^p,n^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor \frac{n-1}{2} \rfloor} (z - (-q)^{4s+2t+\lvert p-m\rvert})$
		$k = l \in \{n, n-1\}$	$d_{n^p,n^m}(z) = d_{(n-1)^p,(n-1)^m}(z) = \prod_{t=0}^{\min(p,m)-1} \prod_{s=1}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} (z - (-q)^{4s+2t-2+\lvert p-m\rvert})$
$A_{2n-1}^{(2)}$	$n \geq 3$	$1 \leq k, l \leq n$	$d_{l^p,k^m}^{A_{2n-1}^{(2)}}(z) = d_{l^p,k^m}^{A_{2n-1}^{(1)}}(z) \times d_{l^p,(2n-k)^m}^{A_{2n-1}^{(1)}}(-z)$
$A_{2n}^{(2)}$	$n \geq 1$	$1 \leq k, l \leq n$	$d_{l^p,k^m}^{A_{2n}^{(2)}}(z) = d_{l^p,k^m}^{A_{2n}^{(1)}}(z) \times d_{l^p,(2n+1-k)^m}^{A_{2n}^{(1)}}(z)$
$D_{n+1}^{(2)}$	$n \geq 2$	$1 \leq k, l \leq n-1$	$d_{l^p,k^m}^{D_{n+1}^{(2)}}(z; q) = d_{l^p,k^m}^{D_{n+1}^{(1)}}(z^2; q^2)$
		$1 \leq k \leq n-1$	$d_{l^p,n^m}^{D_{n+1}^{(2)}}(z; q) = d_{l^p,n^m}^{D_{n+1}^{(1)}}(-z^2; q^2)$
		$k = l = n$	$d_{n^p,n^m}^{D_{n+1}^{(2)}}(z; q) = d_{n^p,n^m}^{D_{n+1}^{(1)}}(-z; q^2)$

References

[AK97] Tatsuya Akasaka and Masaki Kashiwara. Finite-dimensional representations of quantum affine algebras. *Publ. Res. Inst. Math. Sci.*, 33(5):839–867, 1997.

[Bax89] Rodney J. Baxter. *Exactly solved models in statistical mechanics*. Academic Press Inc. [Harcourt Brace Jovanovich Publishers], London, 1989. Reprint of the 1982 original.

[Bet31] H. Bethe. Zur Theorie der Metalle. *Zeitschrift für Physik*, 71(3-4):205–226, 1931.

[BKM14] Jonathan Brundan, Alexander Kleshchev, and Peter J. McNamara. Homological properties of finite-type Khovanov–Lauda–Rouquier algebras. *Duke Math. J.*, 163(7):1353–1404, 2014.

[Bou02] Nicolas Bourbaki. *Lie groups and Lie algebras. Chapters 4–6.* Elements of Mathematics (Berlin). Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 2002. Translated from the 1968 French original by Andrew Pressley.

[BR90] V. V. Bazhanov and N. Reshetikhin. Restricted solid-on-solid models connected with simply laced algebras and conformal field theory. *J. Phys. A*, 23(9):1477–1492, 1990.

[BS06] Vladimir V. Bazhanov and Sergey M. Sergeev. Zamolodchikov's tetrahedron equation and hidden structure of quantum groups. *J. Phys. A*, 39(13):3295–3310, 2006.

[BS17] Daniel Bump and Anne Schilling. *Crystal bases.* World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd., Hackensack, NJ, 2017. Representations and combinatorics.

[BS20] Rekha Biswal and Travis Scrimshaw. Existence of Kirillov–Reshetikhin crystals for multiplicity free nodes. *Publ. Res. Inst. Math. Sci.*, 56(4), 2020.

[CFS14] Vyjayanthi Chari, Ghislain Fourier, and Daisuke Sagaki. Posets, tensor products and Schur positivity. *Algebra Number Theory*, 8(4):933–961, 2014.

[Cha95] Vyjayanthi Chari. Minimal affinizations of representations of quantum groups: the rank 2 case. *Publ. Res. Inst. Math. Sci.*, 31(5):873–911, 1995.

[Cha01] Vyjayanthi Chari. On the fermionic formula and the Kirillov–Reshetikhin conjecture. *Int. Math. Res. Not. IMRN*, (12):629–654, 2001.

[Cha02] Vyjayanthi Chari. Braid group actions and tensor products. *Int. Math. Res. Not.*, (7):357–382, 2002.

[CM05] Vyjayanthi Chari and Adriano A. Moura. Characters and blocks for finite-dimensional representations of quantum affine algebras. *Int. Math. Res. Not.*, (5):257–298, 2005.

[CP91] Vyjayanthi Chari and Andrew Pressley. Quantum affine algebras. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 142(2):261–283, 1991.

[CP95a] Vyjayanthi Chari and Andrew Pressley. *A guide to quantum groups*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1995. Corrected reprint of the 1994 original.

[CP95b] Vyjayanthi Chari and Andrew Pressley. Minimal affinizations of representations of quantum groups: the nonsimply-laced case. *Lett. Math. Phys.*, 35(2):99–114, 1995.

[CP95c] Vyjayanthi Chari and Andrew Pressley. Quantum affine algebras and their representations. *Representations of groups (Banff, AB, 1994)*, 16:59–78, 1995.

[CP96a] Vyjayanthi Chari and Andrew Pressley. Minimal affinizations of representations of quantum groups: the simply laced case. *J. Algebra*, 184(1):1–30, 1996.

[CP96b] Vyjayanthi Chari and Andrew Pressley. Yangians, integrable quantum systems and Dorey's rule. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 181(2):265–302, 1996.

[CP98] Vyjayanthi Chari and Andrew Pressley. Twisted quantum affine algebras. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 196(2):461–476, 1998.

[Dev25] The Sage Developers. *Sage Mathematics Software (Version 10.7)*. The Sage Development Team, 2025. http://www.sagemath.org.

[DO94] Etsurō Date and Masato Okado. Calculation of excitation spectra of the spin model related with the vector representation of the quantized affine algebra of type $A_n^{(1)}$. *Internat. J. Modern Phys. A*, 9(3):399–417, 1994.

[Dor91] Patrick Dorey. Root systems and purely elastic S-matrices. *Nuclear Phys. B*, 358(3):654–676, 1991.

[Dor93] Patrick Dorey. Hidden geometrical structures in integrable models. In *Integrable quantum field theories (Como, 1992)*, volume 310 of *NATO Adv. Sci. Inst. Ser. B Phys.*, pages 83–97. Plenum, New York, 1993.

[Dri85] V. G. Drinfel′d. Hopf algebras and the quantum Yang–Baxter equation. *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR*, 283(5):1060–1064, 1985.

[Dri87] V. G. Drinfel′d. A new realization of Yangians and of quantum affine algebras. *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR*, 296(1):13–17, 1987.

[Fad95] L. Faddeev. Instructive history of the quantum inverse scattering method. *Acta Appl. Math.*, 39(1-3):69–84, 1995. KdV '95 (Amsterdam, 1995).

[FH91] William Fulton and Joe Harris. *Representation theory*, volume 129 of *Graduate Texts in Mathematics*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1991. A first course, Readings in Mathematics.

[FH14] Ghislain Fourier and David Hernandez. Schur positivity and Kirillov–Reshetikhin modules. *SIGMA Symmetry Integrability Geom. Methods Appl.*, 10:Paper 058, 9, 2014.

[FH15] Edward Frenkel and David Hernandez. Baxter's relations and spectra of quantum integrable models. *Duke Math. J.*, 164(12):2407–2460, 2015.

[FHOO22] Ryo Fujita, David Hernandez, Se-jin Oh, and Hironori Oya. Isomorphisms among quantum Grothendieck rings and propagation of positivity. *J. Reine Angew. Math.*, 785:117–185, 2022.

[FM01] Edward Frenkel and Evgeny Mukhin. Combinatorics of q-characters of finite-dimensional representations of quantum affine algebras. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 216(1):23–57, 2001.

[FO21] Ryo Fujita and Se-jin Oh. Q-data and representation theory of untwisted quantum affine algebras. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 384(2):1351–1407, 2021.

[FOS09] Ghislain Fourier, Masato Okado, and Anne Schilling. Kirillov–Reshetikhin crystals for nonexceptional types. *Adv. Math.*, 222(3):1080–1116, 2009.

[FOS10] Ghislain Fourier, Masato Okado, and Anne Schilling. Perfectness of Kirillov–Reshetikhin crystals for nonexceptional types. *Contemp. Math.*, 506:127–143, 2010.

[FR99] Edward Frenkel and Nicolai Reshetikhin. The q-characters of representations of quantum affine algebras and deformations of $\mathscr{W}$-algebras. In *Recent developments in quantum affine algebras and related topics (Raleigh, NC, 1998)*, volume 248 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 163–205. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1999.

[Fuj22a] Ryo Fujita. Affine highest weight categories and quantum affine Schur–Weyl duality of Dynkin quiver types. *Represent. Theory*, 26:211–263, 2022.

[Fuj22b] Ryo Fujita. Graded quiver varieties and singularities of normalized R-matrices for fundamental modules. *Selecta Math. (N.S.)*, 28(1):Paper No. 2, 45, 2022.

[Her06] David Hernandez. The Kirillov–Reshetikhin conjecture and solutions of T-systems. *J. Reine Angew. Math.*, 596:63–87, 2006.

[Her07] David Hernandez. On minimal affinizations of representations of quantum groups. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 276(1):221–259, 2007.

[Her10a] David Hernandez. Kirillov–Reshetikhin conjecture: the general case. *Int. Math. Res. Not. IMRN*, (1):149–193, 2010.

[Her10b] David Hernandez. Simple tensor products. *Invent. Math.*, 181(3):649–675, 2010.

[HKO+99] G. Hatayama, A. Kuniba, M. Okado, T. Takagi, and Y. Yamada. Remarks on fermionic formula. In *Recent developments in quantum affine algebras and related topics (Raleigh, NC, 1998)*, volume 248 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 243–291. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1999.

[HKO+02] Goro Hatayama, Atsuo Kuniba, Masato Okado, Taichiro Takagi, and Zengo Tsuboi. Paths, crystals and fermionic formulae. In *MathPhys odyssey, 2001*, volume 23 of *Prog. Math. Phys.*, pages 205–272. Birkhäuser Boston, Boston, MA, 2002.

[HL10] David Hernandez and Bernard Leclerc. Cluster algebras and quantum affine algebras. *Duke Math. J.*, 154(2):265–341, 2010.

[HL15] David Hernandez and Bernard Leclerc. Quantum Grothendieck rings and derived Hall algebras. *J. Reine Angew. Math.*, 701:77–126, 2015.

[HL16] David Hernandez and Bernard Leclerc. A cluster algebra approach to q-characters of Kirillov–Reshetikhin modules. *J. Eur. Math. Soc. (JEMS)*, 18(5):1113–1159, 2016.

[HO19] David Hernandez and Hironori Oya. Quantum Grothendieck ring isomorphisms, cluster algebras and Kazhdan–Lusztig algorithm. *Adv. Math.*, 347:192–272, 2019.

[Hum08] James E. Humphreys. *Representations of semisimple Lie algebras in the BGG category $\mathcal{O}$*, volume 94 of *Graduate Studies in Mathematics*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2008.

[IKT12] Rei Inoue, Atsuo Kuniba, and Taichiro Takagi. Integrable structure of box-ball systems: crystal, Bethe ansatz, ultradiscretization and tropical geometry. *J. Phys. A*, 45(7):073001, 64, 2012.

[Jim85] Michio Jimbo. A q-difference analogue of $U(\mathfrak{g})$ and the Yang–Baxter equation. *Lett. Math. Phys.*, 10(1):63–69, 1985.

[Kac90] Victor G. Kac. *Infinite-dimensional Lie algebras*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, third edition, 1990.

[Kas90] Masaki Kashiwara. Crystalizing the q-analogue of universal enveloping algebras. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 133(2):249–260, 1990.

[Kas91] Masaki Kashiwara. On crystal bases of the Q-analogue of universal enveloping algebras. *Duke Math. J.*, 63(2):465–516, 1991.

[Kas93] Masaki Kashiwara. Global crystal bases of quantum groups. *Duke Math. J.*, 69(2):455–485, 1993.

[Kas02] Masaki Kashiwara. On level-zero representations of quantized affine algebras. *Duke Math. J.*, 112(1):117–175, 2002.

[KC02] Masaki Kashiwara and Charles Cochet. *Bases cristallines des groupes quantiques*. Number 9. Société mathématique de France, 2002.

[Kir83] A. N. Kirillov. Combinatorial identities and completeness of states of the Heisenberg magnet. volume 131, pages 88–105. 1983. Questions in quantum field theory and statistical physics, 4.

[Kir84] A. N. Kirillov. Completeness of states of the generalized Heisenberg magnet. volume 134, pages 169–189. 1984. Automorphic functions and number theory, II.

[KK19] Masaki Kashiwara and Myungho Kim. Laurent phenomenon and simple modules of quiver Hecke algebras. *Compos. Math.*, 155(12):2263–2295, 2019.

[KKK15] Seok-Jin Kang, Masaki Kashiwara, and Myungho Kim. Symmetric quiver Hecke algebras and R-matrices of quantum affine algebras, II. *Duke Math. J.*, 164(8):1549–1602, 2015.

[KKK18] Seok-Jin Kang, Masaki Kashiwara, and Myungho Kim. Symmetric quiver Hecke algebras and R-matrices of quantum affine algebras. *Invent. Math.*, 211(2):591–685, 2018.

[KKKO15a] Seok-Jin Kang, Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, and Se-jin Oh. Simplicity of heads and socles of tensor products. *Compos. Math.*, 151(2):377–396, 2015.

[KKKO15b] Seok-Jin Kang, Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, and Se-jin Oh. Symmetric quiver Hecke algebras and R-matrices of quantum affine algebras III. *Proc. Lond. Math. Soc. (3)*, 111(2):420–444, 2015.

[KKKO16] Seok-Jin Kang, Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, and Se-jin Oh. Symmetric quiver Hecke algebras and R-matrices of quantum affine algebras IV. *Selecta Math. (N.S.)*, 22(4):1987–2015, 2016.

[KKKO18] Seok-Jin Kang, Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, and Se-jin Oh. Monoidal categorification of cluster algebras. *J. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 31(2):349–426, 2018.

[KKM+92a] Seok-Jin Kang, Masaki Kashiwara, Kailash C. Misra, Tetsuji Miwa, Toshiki Nakashima, and Atsushi Nakayashiki. Affine crystals and vertex models. In *Infinite analysis, Part A, B (Kyoto, 1991)*, volume 16 of *Adv. Ser. Math. Phys.*, pages 449–484. World Sci. Publ., River Edge, NJ, 1992.

[KKM+92b] Seok-Jin Kang, Masaki Kashiwara, Kailash C. Misra, Tetsuji Miwa, Toshiki Nakashima, and Atsushi Nakayashiki. Perfect crystals of quantum affine Lie algebras. *Duke Math. J.*, 68(3):499–607, 1992.

[KKN25] Yuki Kanakubo, Gleb Koshevoy, and Toshiki Nakashima. Products of Kirillov–Reshetikhin modules and maximal green sequences. Preprint, arXiv:2503.23833, 2025.

[KKO19] Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, and Se-jin Oh. Monoidal categories of modules over quantum affine algebras of type A and B. *Proc. Lond. Math. Soc. (3)*, 118(1):43–77, 2019.

[KKOP20] Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, Se-jin Oh, and Euiyong Park. Monoidal categorification and quantum affine algebras. *Compos. Math.*, 156(5):1039–1077, 2020.

[KKOP21] Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, Se-Jin Oh, and Euiyong Park. Localizations for quiver Hecke algebras. *Pure Appl. Math. Q.*, 17(4):1465–1548, 2021.

[KKOP22a] Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, Se-jin Oh, and Euiyong Park. Cluster algebra structures on module categories over quantum affine algebras. *Proc. Lond. Math. Soc. (3)*, 124(3):301–372, 2022.

[KKOP22b] Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, Se-jin Oh, and Euiyong Park. Simply laced root systems arising from quantum affine algebras. *Compos. Math.*, 158(1):168–210, 2022.

[KKOP23] Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, Se-jin Oh, and Euiyong Park. Localizations for quiver Hecke algebras II. *Proc. Lond. Math. Soc. (3)*, 127(4):1134–1184, 2023.

[KKOP24a] Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, Se-jin Oh, and Euiyong Park. Affinizations, R-matrices and reflection functors. *Adv. Math.*, 443:Paper No. 109598, 83, 2024.

[KKOP24b] Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, Se-jin Oh, and Euiyong Park. Monoidal categorification and quantum affine algebras II. *Invent. Math.*, 236(2):837–924, 2024.

[KKOP24c] Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, Se-jin Oh, and Euiyong Park. PBW theory for quantum affine algebras. *J. Eur. Math. Soc. (JEMS)*, 26(7):2679–2743, 2024.

[KKOP25a] Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, Se-jin Oh, and Euiyong Park. Global bases for Bosonic extensions of quantum unipotent coordinate rings. *Proc. Lond. Math. Soc. (3)*, 131(2):Paper No. e70076, 2025.

[KKOP25b] Masaki Kashiwara, Myungho Kim, Se-jin Oh, and Euiyong Park. Monoidal categorification and quantum affine algebras III. Preprint, arXiv:2409.14552, 2025.

[KL09] Mikhail Khovanov and Aaron D Lauda. A diagrammatic approach to categorification of quantum groups I. *Representation Theory of the American Mathematical Society*, 13(14):309–347, 2009.

[Kle98] Michael Steven Kleber. *Finite dimensional representations of quantum affine algebras*. ProQuest LLC, Ann Arbor, MI, 1998. Thesis (Ph.D.)–University of California, Berkeley.

[KM94] Seok-Jin Kang and Kailash C. Misra. Crystal bases and tensor product decompositions of $U_q(G_2)$-modules. *J. Algebra*, 163(3):675–691, 1994.

[KN94] Masaki Kashiwara and Toshiki Nakashima. Crystal graphs for representations of the q-analogue of classical Lie algebras. *J. Algebra*, 165(2):295–345, 1994.

[Kni95] Harold Knight. Spectra of tensor products of finite-dimensional representations of Yangians. *J. Algebra*, 174(1):187–196, 1995.

[KNS11] Atsuo Kuniba, Tomoki Nakanishi, and Junji Suzuki. T-systems and Y-systems in integrable systems. *J. Phys. A*, 44(10):103001, 146, 2011.

[KO18] Masaki Kashiwara and Se-jin Oh. Categorical relations between Langlands dual quantum affine algebras: doubly laced types. *J. Algebraic Combin.*, Jun 2018.

[KO23] Masaki Kashiwara and Se-jin Oh. The (q,t)-Cartan matrix specialized at $q=1$ and its applications. *Math. Z.*, 303(42), 2023.

[KOS95] Atsuo Kuniba, Yasuhiro Ohta, and Junji Suzuki. Quantum Jacobi–Trudi and Giambelli formulae for $U_q(B_r^{(1)})$ from the analytic Bethe ansatz. *J. Phys. A*, 28(21):6211–6226, 1995.

[KR87] A. N. Kirillov and N. Yu. Reshetikhin. Representations of Yangians and multiplicities of the inclusion of the irreducible components of the tensor product of representations of simple Lie algebras. *Zap. Nauchn. Sem. Leningrad. Otdel. Mat. Inst. Steklov. (LOMI)*, 160(Anal. Teor. Chisel i Teor. Funktsiĭ. 8):211–221, 301, 1987.

[Kun22] Atsuo Kuniba. *Quantum groups in three-dimensional integrability*. Theoretical and Mathematical Physics. Springer, Singapore, [2022] ©2022.

[Li15] Jian-Rong Li. On the extended T-system of type C_3. *J. Algebraic Combin.*, 41(2):577–617, 2015.

[LM13] Jian-Rong Li and Evgeny Mukhin. Extended T-system of type G_2. *SIGMA Symmetry Integrability Geom. Methods Appl.*, 9:Paper 054, 28, 2013.

[LPP07] Thomas Lam, Alexander Postnikov, and Pavlo Pylyavskyy. Schur positivity and Schur log-concavity. *Amer. J. Math.*, 129(6):1611–1622, 2007.

[McN15] Peter J McNamara. Finite dimensional representations of Khovanov–Lauda–Rouquier algebras I: finite type. *Journal für die Reine und Angewandte Mathematik (Crelles Journal)*, 2015(707):103–124, 2015.

[MY12] E. Mukhin and C. A. S. Young. Extended T-systems. *Selecta Math. (N.S.)*, 18(3):591–631, 2012.

[Nak03] Hiraku Nakajima. t-analogs of q-characters of Kirillov–Reshetikhin modules of quantum affine algebras. *Represent. Theory*, 7:259–274 (electronic), 2003.

[Nak04] Hiraku Nakajima. Quiver varieties and t-analogs of q-characters of quantum affine algebras. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 160(3):1057–1097, 2004.

[Nak10] Hiraku Nakajima. t-analogs of q-characters of quantum affine algebras of type E_6, E_7, E_8. In *Representation theory of algebraic groups and quantum groups*, volume 284 of *Progr. Math.*, pages 257–272. Birkhäuser/Springer, New York, 2010.

[Nao18] Katsuyuki Naoi. Existence of Kirillov–Reshetikhin crystals of type $G_2^{(1)}$ and $D_4^{(3)}$. *J. Algebra*, 512:47–65, 2018.

[Nao21] Katsuyuki Naoi. Equivalence between module categories over quiver Hecke algebras and Hernandez–Leclerc's categories in general types. *Adv. Math.*, 389:Paper No. 107916, 47, 2021.

[Nao24] Katsuyuki Naoi. Strong duality data of type A and extended T-systems. *Transform. Groups*, pages 1–47, 2024.

[NN06] Wakako Nakai and Tomoki Nakanishi. Paths, tableaux and q-characters of quantum affine algebras: The C_n case. *J. Phys. A*, 39(9):2083–2115, 2006.

[NN07a] Wakako Nakai and Tomoki Nakanishi. Paths and tableaux descriptions of Jacobi–Trudi determinant associated with quantum affine algebra of type C_n. *SIGMA Symmetry Integrability Geom. Methods Appl.*, 3:Paper 078, 20, 2007.

[NN07b] Wakako Nakai and Tomoki Nakanishi. Paths and tableaux descriptions of Jacobi–Trudi determinant associated with quantum affine algebra of type D_n. *J. Algebraic Combin.*, 26(2):253–290, 2007.

[NN11] Wakako Nakai and Tomoki Nakanishi. On Frenkel-Mukhin algorithm for q-character of quantum affine algebras. In *Exploring new structures and natural constructions in mathematical physics*, volume 61 of *Adv. Stud. Pure Math.*, pages 327–347. Math. Soc. Japan, Tokyo, 2011.

[NS21] Katsuyuki Naoi and Travis Scrimshaw. Existence of Kirillov–Reshetikhin crystals for near adjoint nodes in exceptional types. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 225(5):Paper No. 106593, 38, 2021.

[Oh15] Se-jin Oh. The denominators of normalized R-matrices of types $A_{2n-1}^{(2)}$, $A_{2n}^{(2)}$, $B_n^{(1)}$ and $D_{n+1}^{(2)}$. *Publ. Res. Inst. Math. Sci.*, 51(4):709–744, 2015.

[Oh16] Se-jin Oh. Auslander–Reiten quiver of type D and generalized quantum affine Schur–Weyl duality. *J. Algebra*, 460:203–252, 2016.

[Oh17] Se-jin Oh. Auslander–Reiten quiver of type A and generalized quantum affine Schur–Weyl duality. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 369(3):1895–1933, 2017.

[Oh19] Se-jin Oh. Auslander–Reiten quiver and representation theories related to KLR-type Schur–Weyl duality. *Math. Z.*, (1-2):499–554, 2019.

[Oka13] Masato Okado. Simplicity and similarity of Kirillov–Reshetikhin crystals. In *Recent developments in algebraic and combinatorial aspects of representation theory*, volume 602 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 183–194. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 2013.

[OS08] Masato Okado and Anne Schilling. Existence of Kirillov–Reshetikhin crystals for nonexceptional types. *Represent. Theory*, 12:186–207, 2008.

[OS19a] Se-jin Oh and Travis Scrimshaw. Addendum – Categorical relations between Langlands dual quantum affine algebras: Exceptional cases. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 371(2):833–837, 2019.

[OS19b] Se-jin Oh and Travis Scrimshaw. Categorical relations between Langlands dual quantum affine algebras: Exceptional cases. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 368(1):295–367, 2019.

[OS19c] Se-jin Oh and Uhi Rinn Suh. Combinatorial Auslander-Reiten quivers and reduced expressions. *J. Korean Math. Soc.*, 56(2):353–385, 2019.

[OS19d] Se-jin Oh and Uhi Rinn Suh. Twisted and folded Auslander–Reiten quivers and applications to the representation theory of quantum affine algebras. *J. Algebra*, 535(1):53–132, 2019.

[OSS03] Masato Okado, Anne Schilling, and Mark Shimozono. Virtual crystals and Kleber's algorithm. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 238(1-2):187–209, 2003.

[OSS18] Masato Okado, Anne Schilling, and Travis Scrimshaw. Rigged configuration bijection and proof of the $X = M$ conjecture for nonexceptional affine types. *J. Algebra*, 516:1–37, 2018.

[Pap94] Paolo Papi. A characterization of a special ordering in a root system. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 120(3):661–665, 1994.

[Rou08] Raphaël Rouquier. 2-Kac–Moody algebras. 2008. Preprint, arXiv:0812.5023.

[Rou12] Raphaël Rouquier. Quiver Hecke algebras and 2-Lie algebras. *Algebra Colloq.*, 19(2):359–410, 2012.

[Scr20] Travis Scrimshaw. Uniform description of the rigged configuration bijection. *Selecta Math. (N.S.)*, 26(3):Paper No. 42, 84, 2020.

[Shi02] M. Shimozono. Affine type A crystal structure on tensor products of rectangles, Demazure characters, and nilpotent varieties. *J. Algebraic Combin.*, 15(2):151–187, 2002.

[VV02] Michela Varagnolo and Eric Vasserot. Standard modules of quantum affine algebras. *Duke Math. J.*, 111(3):509–533, 2002.

[VV11] Michela Varagnolo and Eric Vasserot. Canonical bases and KLR-algebras. *J. Reine Angew. Math.*, 659:67–100, 2011.

[YZ11] C. A. S. Young and R. Zegers. Dorey's rule and the q-characters of simply-laced quantum affine algebras. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 302(3):789–813, 2011.

[Zhe87] Dmitry Petrovich Zhelobenko. Extremal cocycles of Weyl groups. *Functional analysis and its applications*, 21(3):183–192, 1987.

(S.-j. Oh) Department of Mathematics, Sungkyunkwan University, Suwon, South Korea
Email address, S.-j. Oh: sejin092@gmail.com
URL: https://sites.google.com/site/mathsejinoh/

(T. Scrimshaw) Department of Mathematics, Hokkaido University, 5 Chōme Kita 8 Jōnishi, Kita Ward, Sapporo, Hokkaidō 060-0808
Email address: tcscrims@gmail.com
URL: https://tscrim.github.io/